

OpenCable™ Specifications

OpenCable Host Thin Chassis Device Core Functional Requirements

OC-SP-HOSTTC-CFR-I08-130418

ISSUED

Notice

This OpenCable document is the result of a cooperative effort undertaken at the direction of Cable Television Laboratories, Inc. for the benefit of the cable industry and its customers. This document may contain references to other documents not owned or controlled by CableLabs®. Use and understanding of this document may require access to such other documents. Designing, manufacturing, distributing, using, selling, or servicing products, or providing services, based on this document may require intellectual property licenses for technology referenced in the document.

Neither CableLabs nor any member company is responsible to any party for any liability of any nature whatsoever resulting from or arising out of use or reliance upon this document, or any document referenced herein. This document is furnished on an "AS IS" basis and neither CableLabs nor its members provides any representation or warranty, express or implied, regarding the accuracy, completeness, or fitness for a particular purpose of this document, or any document referenced herein.

DISCLAIMER

This document is published by Cable Television Laboratories, Inc. ("CableLabs®").

CableLabs reserves the right to revise this document for any reason including, but not limited to, changes in laws, regulations, or standards promulgated by various agencies; technological advances; or changes in equipment design, manufacturing techniques, or operating procedures described, or referred to, herein. CableLabs makes no representation or warranty, express or implied, with respect to the completeness, accuracy, or utility of the document or any information or opinion contained in the report. Any use or reliance on the information or opinion is at the risk of the user, and CableLabs shall not be liable for any damage or injury incurred by any person arising out of the completeness, accuracy, or utility of any information or opinion contained in the document.

This document is not to be construed to suggest that any affiliated company modify or change any of its products or procedures, nor does this document represent a commitment by CableLabs or any cable member to purchase any product whether or not it meets the described characteristics. Nothing contained herein shall be construed to confer any license or right to any intellectual property, whether or not the use of any information herein necessarily utilizes such intellectual property. This document is not to be construed as an endorsement of any product or company or as the adoption or promulgation of any guidelines, standards, or recommendations.

Document Status Sheet

Document Control Number:	OC-SP-HOSTTC-CFR-I08-130418			
Document Title:	OpenCable Host Thin Chassis Device Core Functional Requirements			
Revision History:	I01 - Released 1/22/10 I02 - Released 5/7/10 I03 - Released 9/10/10 I04 - Released 2/4/11 I05 - Released 5/12/11 I06 - Released 1/12/12 I07 - Released 5/31/12 I08 - Released 4/18/13			
Date:	April 18, 2013			
Status:	Work in Progress	Draft	Issued	Closed
Distribution Restrictions:	author only	CL/Member	CL/Member/Vendor	Public

Key to Document Status Codes:

- Work in Progress** An incomplete document, designed to guide discussion and generate feedback that may include several alternative requirements for consideration.

- Draft** A document in specification format considered largely complete, but lacking review by Members and vendors. Drafts are susceptible to substantial change during the review process.

- Issued** A stable document, which has undergone rigorous member and vendor review and is suitable for product design and development, cross-vendor interoperability, and for certification testing.

- Closed** A static document, reviewed, tested, validated, and closed to further engineering change requests to the specification through CableLabs.

Trademarks:

CableLabs® is a registered trademark of Cable Television Laboratories, Inc. Other CableLabs marks are listed at <http://www.cablelabs.com/certqual/trademarks>. All other marks are the property of their respective owners.

Table of Contents

- 1 INTRODUCTION (INFORMATIVE)1**

 - 1.1 OPENCABLE OVERVIEW 1
 - 1.2 OPENCABLE HOST THIN CHASSIS DEVICE OVERVIEW..... 1
 - 1.3 COMPLIANCE NOTATION..... 2
 - 1.4 GLOSSARY OF TERMS 2
 - 1.5 ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS..... 3

- 2 REFERENCES6**

 - 2.1 NORMATIVE REFERENCES6
 - 2.2 INFORMATIVE REFERENCES9
 - 2.3 REFERENCE ACQUISITION 10
 - 2.3.1 *OpenCable Bundle Requirements*..... 10
 - 2.3.2 *Other References*..... 10

- 3 OVERVIEW OF CORE SERVICES AND FUNCTIONALITIES11**

 - 3.1 OPENCABLE HOST THIN CHASSIS COMPONENTS 11
 - 3.1.1 *Core Services (Informative)*..... 12
 - 3.1.2 *Core Functions and Features (Informative)*..... 12
 - 3.2 GENERAL COMPLIANCE (NORMATIVE)..... 13

- 4 SECURITY.....14**

 - 4.1 CONDITIONAL ACCESS..... 14
 - 4.2 PARTITIONING OF MEMORY 14
 - 4.3 CERTIFICATE STORAGE AND MANAGEMENT 14
 - 4.4 DIGITAL PROGRAM COPY PROTECTION 14

- 5 BI-DIRECTIONAL PHYSICAL LAYER CHARACTERISTICS.....15**

 - 5.1 RF INTERFACE..... 15
 - 5.1.1 *Maximum Individual Carrier Amplitude*..... 15
 - 5.2 COMMUNICATION CHANNELS 15
 - 5.2.1 *Forward Application Transport (FAT) Channel*..... 16
 - 5.2.2 *Out-Of-Band Signaling*..... 16
 - 5.3 PHYSICAL LAYER SPECIFICATIONS 16
 - 5.3.1 *FAT Channel, FDC Characteristics and RF Performance*..... 16
 - 5.3.2 *Upstream Transmission Characteristics*..... 19

- 6 CABLECARD INTERFACE.....22**

 - 6.1 OPENCABLE HOST DEVICE FUNCTIONALITY WITHOUT A CABLECARD DEVICE..... 22
 - 6.2 MAN MACHINE INTERFACE (MMI) SUPPORT 23
 - 6.3 SOFTWARE..... 23
 - 6.3.1 *Middleware*..... 23
 - 6.3.2 *Software Download* 23
 - 6.4 HOST MAC ADDRESS..... 24
 - 6.5 SUPPORT FOR LOCAL TIME CALCULATION..... 24
 - 6.6 GENERIC FEATURE CONTROL RESOURCE REQUIREMENTS 25
 - 6.7 CARD SNMP MESSAGE SUPPORT..... 25
 - 6.7.1 *Support Functionality (Informative)*..... 25
 - 6.7.2 *Mixed Object Identifier Processing (Informative)*..... 27
 - 6.7.3 *GetBulkRequest Processing (Informative)*..... 28
 - 6.7.4 *Support Requirements (Normative)* 31

7	MULTI-MEDIA INTERFACES	33
7.1	OPENCABLE HOST INPUT DEVICES.....	33
7.2	OPENCABLE HOST FRONT PANEL.....	33
8	VIDEO	35
8.1	DIGITAL VIDEO.....	35
8.1.1	MPEG-2 Transport.....	35
8.1.2	Digital Video Decoding.....	36
8.1.3	Digital Television (DTV) Out-of-Band Service/System Information.....	38
8.1.4	Digital Television (DTV) Closed Captioning.....	38
8.1.5	Digital Television (DTV) Content Advisory Information.....	39
8.1.6	Digital Television (DTV) Emergency Alert Service (EAS).....	39
8.2	HD PHYSICAL INTERFACE.....	39
8.2.1	Uncompressed Digital Video Interface.....	39
8.3	SIGNAL FORMATS.....	40
8.3.1	Scanning Formats for the HDMI Interface.....	40
8.3.2	Video Transmission Format for the HDMI Interface.....	41
8.3.3	Colorimetry for the HDMI Interface.....	41
8.4	STEREOSCOPIC 3D SUPPORT.....	41
8.4.1	3D Coding (format) Support.....	41
8.4.2	InBand Metadata Processing Requirements.....	42
8.4.3	STB 3DTV Interface Requirements.....	42
8.4.4	Closed Caption Requirements.....	43
8.4.5	Graphics and OSD Requirements.....	43
8.4.6	EAS Requirements.....	44
9	AUDIO	47
9.1	MUSIC CHANNEL SERVICES.....	47
10	OPENCABLE HOST DEVICE POWERING STATES	48
10.1	CABLECARD STANDBY MODE POWER MANAGEMENT.....	48
11	OPENCABLE HOST DEVICE DIAGNOSTICS	49
11.1	DIAGNOSTIC PARAMETERS.....	50
11.1.1	Power Status.....	50
11.1.2	Boot Status.....	50
11.1.3	Memory Allocation.....	50
11.1.4	Application Information.....	50
11.1.5	Firmware Version.....	51
11.1.6	MAC and Network Addresses.....	52
11.1.7	Status of FDC.....	53
11.1.8	Status of FAT.....	53
11.1.9	Status of RDC.....	54
11.1.10	Current Channel Status.....	55
11.1.11	HDMI Port Status.....	55
11.1.12	Status of DOCSIS transport channels.....	56
11.1.13	Signaling Status.....	56
11.1.14	Status of Card.....	56
11.1.15	SEB Status.....	58
11.2	HOST DIAGNOSTICS UI REQUIREMENTS.....	59
11.2.1	User Interface Layout.....	59
11.2.2	Host Diagnostics Requirements.....	65
11.3	INITIALIZATION (BOOTUP) SCREEN.....	89
11.3.1	Initialization Diagnostics.....	89

11.3.2	Display requirements.....	94
11.4	FRONT PANEL DIAGNOSTICS (CONDITIONAL MANDATORY)	95
11.4.1	Standard Boot Messages.....	95
11.4.2	Critical Error Messages	96
11.4.3	Non-critical Error Messages	97
11.4.4	General Requirements	99
11.5	PANIC DUMP DIAGNOSTICS	101
12	MECHANICAL	106
13	DSG MODE OPERATION.....	109
13.1	DSG MODE SELECTION	111
13.2	DSG ADVANCED MODE OPERATION	112
13.3	BROADCAST TUNNELS.....	115
13.4	APPLICATION TUNNELS	115
13.5	IP UNICAST AND MULTICAST FLOWS.....	115
13.6	SOCKET FLOWS.....	116
13.7	IP ADDRESS ACQUISITION	118
13.7.1	IPv4 Address Acquisition.....	119
13.7.2	IPv6 Address Acquisition.....	125
13.7.3	IPv6 Address Lease Renewal.....	127
13.7.4	Dual-stack Provisioning Mode (DPM).....	127
14	MANAGEMENT REQUIREMENTS.....	129
14.1	SNMP PROTOCOL REQUIREMENTS	129
14.2	REQUIREMENTS FOR SNMP MIB MODULES	129
14.2.1	Requirements for OC-STB-HOST-MIB MIB Module	129
14.3	ADDITIONAL MIB REQUIREMENTS FOR OCTCD	129
14.3.1	Requirements for SNMPv2-MIB [RFC 3418]	130
14.3.2	Requirements for IF-MIB [RFC 2863]	130
14.3.3	Requirements for IP-MIB [RFC 4293]	132
14.3.4	Requirements for DOCS-CABLE-DEVICE-MIB MIB Module	133
14.3.5	Requirements for HOST-RESOURCES-MIB [RFC 2790]	134
14.4	SNMP ACCESS CONTROL CONFIGURATION REQUIREMENTS	134
14.4.1	SNMP Access Control Configuration for SNMP Community-based Access [RFC 1901]	134
14.4.2	SNMP Access Control Configuration for SNMPv1v2c Coexistence Mode [RFC 3584]	135
14.5	SNMPv3 NOTIFICATION RECEIVER CONFIGURATION FILE TLV.....	141
14.5.1	Mapping of TLV fields into created SNMPv3 table rows	141
14.6	HOST MIB ACCESS VIA OOB AND LOCAL LOOPBACK.....	148
14.6.1	MIB access via the local loopback address.....	148
14.6.2	MIB access via OOB.....	149
14.7	eSTB ACCESS TO ECM MIB OBJECTS	149
15	HOST THIN CHASSIS OPERATIONAL PARAMETERS CONFIGURATION	150
15.1	HOST THIN CHASSIS DEVICE CONFIGURATION.....	150
15.1.1	eCM Proxy mechanism for the configuration of the OCTCD.....	150
15.2	eSTB CONFIGURATION TLVs.....	151
15.2.1	SNMPv1v2c Coexistence Configuration.....	151
15.2.2	SNMPv3 Access View Configuration.....	154
15.2.3	SNMP MIB Object	155
15.2.4	Vendor ID Encoding.....	156
15.2.5	Vendor Specific Information.....	156
15.2.6	IP Mode Control.....	157
15.2.7	SNMPv3 Notification Receiver	157
15.2.8	SEB Server Enable TLS Cipher Suites.....	160

15.2.9 Home Network Prefix Validation.....161

16 HDMI-CEC SUPPORT.....163

16.1 OVERVIEW OF APPLICATION FEATURES.....163

16.2 REQUIREMENTS FOR APPLICATION FEATURES163

16.2.1 One Touch Play.....163

16.2.2 System Standby.....163

16.2.3 Remote OCTCD Control.....163

16.2.4 Device Select.....165

16.3 ADDRESSING RULES165

16.4 DEVICE RECOGNITION166

ANNEX A FORMAT AND CONTENT FOR OCTCD EVENTS (NORMATIVE).....167

APPENDIX I REVISION HISTORY176

List of Figures

FIGURE 3.1-1 - BLOCK DIAGRAM OF THE OPENCABLE THIN CHASSIS DEVICE (INFORMATIVE).....11

FIGURE 6-1 - BLOCK DIAGRAM OF THE OPENCABLE CABLECARD INTERFACE (INFORMATIVE).....22

FIGURE 6.7-1 - INITIAL FLOW OF AN SNMP GETREQUEST.....26

FIGURE 6.7-2 - SNMP REQUEST PDU FORMAT27

FIGURE 6.7-3 - EXAMPLE RESPONSE-PDU28

FIGURE 6.7-4 - GETBULKREQUEST PDU FORMAT.....29

FIGURE 6.7-5 - GETBULKREQUEST.....30

FIGURE 6.7-6 - GETBULKREQUEST RESPONSE-PDU31

FIGURE 11.2-1 - MAIN MENU PAGE TEMPLATE.....60

FIGURE 11.2-2 - MAIN MENU PAGE EXAMPLE.....62

FIGURE 11.2-3 - SUB-LEVEL MENU TEMPLATE64

FIGURE 11.2-4 - SUB-LEVEL PAGE EXAMPLE.....65

FIGURE 11.2-5 - UNSUCCESSFUL SEB SERVER INITIALIZATION PAGE TEMPLATE.....73

FIGURE 11.2-6 - UNSUCCESSFUL SEB CLIENT INITIALIZATION PAGE TEMPLATE.....73

FIGURE 11.2-7 - SEB SERVER STATUS PAGE TEMPLATE.....74

FIGURE 11.2-8 - SEB CLIENT STATUS PAGE TEMPLATE74

FIGURE 11.2-9 - SEB CLIENT STATUS PAGE - UNABLE TO CONNECT TEMPLATE.....75

FIGURE 11.2-10 - SUMMARY INFO PAGE TEMPLATE.....78

FIGURE 11.2-11 - ERROR SUMMARY PAGE TEMPLATE78

FIGURE 11.2-12 - INBAND NETWORK PAGE TEMPLATE.....79

FIGURE 11.2-13 - OOB NETWORK PAGE TEMPLATE79

FIGURE 11.2-14 - DOCSIS PAGE.....79

FIGURE 11.2-15 - DEVICE ADDRESSES PAGE TEMPLATE80

FIGURE 11.2-16 - OCAP APPS PAGE TEMPLATE80

FIGURE 11.2-17 - MEMORY TABLE PAGE TEMPLATE80

FIGURE 11.2-18 - HDMI INFO PAGE TEMPLATE81

FIGURE 11.2-19 - CARD INFO PAGE TEMPLATE82

FIGURE 11.2-20 - ERROR SUMMARY PAGE EXAMPLE.....83

FIGURE 11.2-21 - INBAND NETWORK PAGE EXAMPLE.....84

FIGURE 11.2-22 - OOB NETWORK PAGE EXAMPLE85

FIGURE 11.2-23 - DOCSIS PAGE EXAMPLE86

FIGURE 11.2-24 - MFG DIAGS PAGE EXAMPLE87

FIGURE 11.2-25 - CARD DIAGS PAGE EXAMPLE88

FIGURE 11.2-26 - REBOOT PAGE EXAMPLE89

FIGURE 11.3-1 - INITIALIZATION SCREEN LAYOUT95

FIGURE 11.4-1 - NORMAL BOOT SEQUENCE	99
FIGURE 11.4-2 - BOOT SEQUENCE - OCAP IMAGE DOWNLOAD	100
FIGURE 11.4-3 - BOOT SEQUENCE - CARD FIRMWARE UPGRADE	101
FIGURE 11.5-1 - SDL DIAGRAM OF PANIC DUMP PROCESS	103
FIGURE 13-1 - HOST THIN CHASSIS DSG ARCHITECTURE.....	109
FIGURE 13.2-1 - SAMPLE ADVANCED MODE MESSAGE FLOW (INFORMATIVE).....	114
FIGURE 13.7-1 - OVERVIEW OF IP ADDRESS ACQUISITION PROCESS	119
FIGURE 14.3-1 - SEB INTERFACE IMPLEMENTATION (INFORMATIVE).....	132

List of Tables

TABLE 5.3-1 - FAT CHANNEL: RF PERFORMANCE PARAMETERS (0° - 40° C).....	16
TABLE 5.3-2 - FDC CHANNEL: RF PERFORMANCE PARAMETERS (0° - 40° C).....	17
TABLE 5.3-3 - ADJACENT CHANNEL CHARACTERISTICS	19
TABLE 5.3-4 - REVERSE DATA CHANNEL RF & MODULATION PERFORMANCE PARAMETERS (0° - 40° C).....	20
TABLE 6.6-1 - GENERIC FEATURES STORED IN THE HOST.....	25
TABLE 6.7-1 - GETBULKREQUEST EXAMPLE	29
TABLE 6.7-2 - FLOW OF GETNEXTREQUESTS	30
TABLE 7.1-1 - FUNCTION KEY SHAPES AND COLORS.....	33
TABLE 7.1-2 - KEY EVENT LABELS	33
TABLE 8.4-1 - MAPPING OF SEI FORMAT INFORMATION TO HDMI VENDOR SPECIFIC INFOFRAMES.....	45
TABLE 11.1-1 - DOWNLOAD FAIL STATUS ERROR CODES	51
TABLE 11.4-1 - STANDARD BOOT MESSAGES.....	95
TABLE 11.4-2 - CRITICAL ERROR MESSAGES.....	96
TABLE 11.4-3 - NON-CRITICAL ERROR MESSAGES	98
TABLE 11.4-4 - ERROR CODES	98
TABLE 11.5-1 - DUMP FILE FORMAT (VERSION 2).....	104
TABLE 12-1 - ENVIRONMENTAL / MECHANICAL REQUIREMENTS	106
TABLE 13.7-1 - DHCP BACKOFF DISTRIBUTION VALUES.....	123
TABLE 13.7-2 - EMBEDDED OPENCABLE HOST THIN CHASSIS DEVICE DHCP REQUEST	123
TABLE 13.7-3 - VENDOR SPECIFIC INFORMATION OPTIONS	126
TABLE 14.3-1 - [RFC 3418] SYSDESCR FORMAT	130
TABLE 14.3-2 - [RFC 2863] IFTABLE, MIB-OBJECT DETAILS FOR OCTCD INTERFACES.....	130
TABLE 14.3-3 - [RFC 4293] IPNETTOPHYSICALTABLE, MIB-OBJECT DETAILS FOR OCTCD INTERFACES	132
TABLE 14.4-1 - SNMP COMMUNITY BASED CONFIGURATION TLV MAPPING.....	135
TABLE 14.4-2 - SNMPV1V2C COEXISTENCE CONFIGURATION TLV MAPPING.....	135
TABLE 14.4-3 - SNMPCOMMUNITYTABLE.....	136
TABLE 14.4-4 - SNMPTARGETADDRTABLE	137
TABLE 14.4-5 - SNMPTARGETADDREXTTABLE.....	137
TABLE 14.4-6 - VACMSECURITYTOGROUPTABLE	138
TABLE 14.4-7 - VACMACCESSTABLE.....	139
TABLE 14.4-8 - VACMCONTEXTTABLE.....	139
TABLE 14.4-9 - SNMPV3 ACCESS VIEW CONFIGURATION TLV MAPPING	140
TABLE 14.4-10 - VACMVIEWTREEFAMILYTABLE	140
TABLE 14.5-1 - SNMPV3 NOTIFICATION RECEIVER TLV MAPPING	141
TABLE 14.5-2 - SNMPNOTIFYTABLE.....	142
TABLE 14.5-3 - SNMPTARGETADDRTABLE	143
TABLE 14.5-4 - SNMPTARGETADDREXTTABLE.....	143
TABLE 14.5-5 - SNMPTARGETPARAMSTABLE.....	144
TABLE 14.5-6 - SNMPNOTIFYFILTERPROFILETABLE.....	145
TABLE 14.5-7 - SNMPNOTIFYFILTERTABLE	145
TABLE 14.5-8 - SNMPCOMMUNITYTABLE.....	145
TABLE 14.5-9 - USMUSERTABLE	146

TABLE 14.5-10 - VACMCONTEXTTABLE.....147
TABLE 14.5-11 - VACMSECURITYTOGROUPTABLE147
TABLE 14.5-12 - VACMACCESSTABLE.....147
TABLE 14.5-13 - VACMVIEWTREEFAMILYTABLE148
TABLE 14.7-1 - OCTCD eSTB ECM MIB OBJECTS.....149
TABLE 15.1-1 - PROVISIONING STEPS OF THE OCTCD.....150
TABLE 16.2-1 - KEYS TO BE PASSED THROUGH.....164
TABLE 16.4-1 - DEFINITION OF <GIVE OCHD INFORMATION> AND <REPORT OCHD INFORMATION>166
TABLE A-1 - eSTB EVENT LIST FOR THE OCTCD.....167

This page left blank intentionally.

1 INTRODUCTION (INFORMATIVE)

1.1 OpenCable Overview

The goal of the OpenCable specifications is to provide retail consumer electronics manufacturers a common interface for supporting interactive cable services. Information is presented in this document that defines the range of minimum capabilities to be supported by such Bidirectional digital devices. OpenCable Project information is available on the OpenCable website <http://www.opencable.com/>.

The OpenCable specifications:

1. Provide integrated environments for broadcast services (over the air and linear services) and real-time interactive multimedia services.
2. Require standards and interoperability. OpenCable takes advantage of standard computing and network architectures, wherever possible, to minimize costs and maximize inclusion of emerging technologies. Standards may include international standards, North American standards, or published *de facto* industry standards. In all cases, the acquisition of the necessary software, hardware, and intellectual properties will be achievable at fair and reasonable costs. All standard interfaces will be in the public domain or will be available for license at a fair and reasonable cost. Closed proprietary systems are to be avoided.
3. Meet regulatory requirements. FCC regulations adopted under the "retail availability" provisions of the Communications Act provide for retail cable navigation devices to operate with CableCARD™ separable security modules. The OpenCable system enables a variety of retail devices and promotes the portability of such devices.
4. Define a renewable and replaceable core encryption system called the CableCARD device.
5. Provide cable Multiple System Operators (MSOs) the ability to inform the navigation device (Host) of the offered services and provide the Host device with the tools to display the cable services as intended by the MSO.

1.2 OpenCable Host Thin Chassis Device Overview

This document describes the requirements for the OpenCable Host Thin Chassis Device (OCTCD).

The goals and objectives of the OCTCD are:

- Reduce the cost of OpenCable-compliant set-top devices;
- To receive digital premium (scrambled) cable services via an interface with a CableLabs-Qualified CableCARD Device;
- To support interactive and two-way services through standardized Out-Of-Band (OOB) and DOCSIS® data channels and direct connection to the cable plant.

Information on the OpenCable Project can be obtained from the OpenCable website at <http://www.opencable.com/>, and information on the DOCSIS specifications, including DOCSIS Set-top Gateway (DSG), can be found at the DOCSIS web site at <http://www.cablemodem.com/>.

Below is more detail on the basic functionality of the OpenCable Host Thin Chassis Device.

- Digital QAM signal processing only;
- Two-way connectivity support via both ANSI/SCTE 55-1, 55-2 OOB and DOCSIS with DSG functionality;

- OpenCable Application Platform (OCAP) support;
- MPEG2 Main Profile @ Main Level (MP@ML) Standard Definition and Main Profile @ High Level (MP@HL) High-Definition decoding;
- AVC Main and High Profile @Level 3.0 and 4.0 that cover Standard and High Definition decoding as specified in [SCTE 128];
- MPEG-1 audio (Layer I, II & III);
- MPEG-4 AAC, MPEG-4 HE-AAC and MPEG-4 HE-AAC-v2 audio;
- High-Definition Multimedia Interface (HDMI) output (source) with CEC capability and HDCP encryption.

1.3 Compliance Notation

Throughout this document, the words used to provide normative statements are capitalized as shown below:

"SHALL"	This word means that the item is an absolute requirement of this specification.
"SHALL NOT"	This phrase means that the item is an absolute prohibition of this specification.
"SHOULD"	This word means that there may exist valid reasons in particular circumstances to ignore this item, but the full implications should be understood and the case carefully weighed before choosing a different course.
"SHOULD NOT"	This phrase means that there may exist valid reasons in particular circumstances when the listed behavior is acceptable or even useful, but the full implications should be understood and the case carefully weighed before implementing any behavior described with this label.
"MAY"	This word means that this item is truly optional. One vendor may choose to include the item because a particular marketplace requires it or because it enhances the product, for example; another vendor may omit the same item.

1.4 Glossary of Terms

This document uses the following terms:

CableCARD Device	A CableCARD device is a detachable device distributed by cable providers that connects to the Host Device. The interface between the CableCARD device and the Host Device is specified by the OpenCable CableCARD Interface 2.0 Specification or OpenCable CableCARD Interface Specification [CCIF]. CableCARD functionality includes copy protection and private CA functions beyond the scope of this specification.
Card	CableCARD Device
Controlled Content	Content that has been transmitted from the CableCARD Device with the encryption mode indicator (EMI) bits set to a value other than zero.
Embedded Cable Modem (eCM)	A Cable Modem that is integrated into an OCTCD for Out-Of-Band signaling, implemented according to either the DOCSIS 2.0 spec [RFIV2.0] or the DOCSIS 3.0 spec [MULPIV3.0], [eDOCSIS] and supports [DSG].

Network Controller	This is the computer system responsible for managing the CableCARD devices within a cable system. It manages CableCARD devices through control and information messages sent via a dedicated Out-Of-Band channel or DSG channel.
Non-volatile Memory	<p>Memory that retains its contents after any of the following conditions occur:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Power is removed from the OCTCD • OCTCD is reset • New firmware image is downloaded <p>Examples of non-volatile memory are flash, battery-backed RAM, and hard disk drive, but this definition does not limit non-volatile memory to these three types.</p>
OpenCable Bundle	The OpenCable Bundle defines a set of specifications required to build a specific version of an OpenCable device. See [OC-BUNDLE].
OpenCable Host Thin Chassis Device	A cable receiver that is compliant with the hardware profile defined by this specification.
Out-Of-Band Messaging	<p>The control and information messages sent from the Network Controller via the Host to the CableCARD requiring a dedicated QPSK channel or DSG channel that may contain the following types of messages:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Conditional Access (CA) messages including entitlements • System Information (SI) messages • Electronic Program Guide (EPG) messages • Emergency Alert System (EAS) messages • Other generic messages

1.5 Abbreviations and acronyms

AC-3	Audio Codec 3 (ATSC A/52B or Dolby Digital™)
AVC	Advanced Video Coding (MPEG-4 Part 10/ H.264)
CA	Conditional Access
CM	Cable Modem
CMTS	Cable Modem Termination System
CVCT	Cable Virtual Channel Table
DOCSIS	Data-Over-Cable Service Interface Specifications
DPB	Decoded Picture Buffer
DPM	Dual-stack Provisioning Mode

DSG	DOCSIS Set-top Gateway
DSGCC	DOCSIS Set-top Gateway Client Controller
DVS	Digital Video Subcommittee
E-AC-3	Enhanced Audio Codec 3 (ATSC A52B or Dolby Digital Plus™)
EAS	Emergency Alert System
eCM	Embedded Cable Modem
EPG	Electronic Program Guide
FAT Channel	Forward Application Transport Channel
FDC	Forward Data Channel
HD	High Definition
HDCP	High-Bandwidth Digital Content Protection
HDMI	High-Definition Multimedia Interface
HDTV	High Definition Television
HFC	Hybrid Fiber/Coax
IP	Internet Protocol
MAC	Media Access Control
MIB	Management Information Base
MMI	Man Machine Interface
MPEG	Moving Picture Experts Group
MPEG-1 AUDIO	MPEG-1 Audio (layer I, II & III) (ISO/IEC 11172-3)
MPEG-4 AUDIO	MPEG-4 AAC, MPEG-4 HE-AAC and MPEG-4 HE-AAC v2 Audio (ISO/IEC 14496-3)
MSO	Multiple System Operator
MTA	Media Terminal Adaptor
NAL	Network Abstraction Layer
NMS	Network Management System
OCAP	OpenCable Application Platform
OCTCD	OpenCable Thin Chassis Device
OOB	Out-Of-Band

OSD	On-screen Display
POD Module	Point Of Deployment Module (also known as CableCARD Device)
RDC	Reverse Data Channel
S3D	Stereoscopic 3D
SAR	Sample Aspect Ratio
SCTE	Society of Cable Telecommunications Engineers
SD	Standard Definition
SDL	Specification and Descriptor Language
SEI	Supplemental Enhancement Information
SEBC	DOCSIS Set-top Extender Bridge Client
SEBS	DOCSIS Set-top Extender Bridge Server
SI	System Information
SNMP	Simple Network Management Protocol
SPS	Sequence Parameter Set
SPTS	Single Program Transport Stream
SRAP	SCTE Random Access Point
TCP	Transmission Control Protocol
TVCT	Terrestrial Virtual Channel Table
UDP	User Datagram Protocol

2 REFERENCES

2.1 Normative References

In order to claim compliance with this specification, it is necessary to conform to the following standards and other works as indicated, in addition to the other requirements of this specification. Notwithstanding, intellectual property rights may be required to use or implement such normative references.

All references are subject to revision, and parties to agreement based on this specification are encouraged to investigate the possibility of applying the most recent editions of the documents listed below.

All references are subject to revision, and parties to agreement based on this specification are encouraged to investigate the possibility of applying the most recent editions of the documents listed below.

References are either specific (identified by date of publication, edition number, version number, etc.) or non-specific:

- For a specific reference, subsequent revisions do not apply.
- For a non-specific, non-Bundle reference, the latest version applies.
- For non-specific CableLabs references that are part of the [OC-BUNDLE], the versions mandated in a particular Bundle apply.

[47CFR15]	47CFR15: Radio Frequency Devices, Class B, FCC.
[47CFR76]	47CFR76: Cable Television Service, FCC.
[A/52B]	ATSC A/52B: Digital Audio Compression Standard (AC-3, E-AC-3) 2005.
[A/53]	ATSC A/53: ATSC Digital Television Standard; Part 1:2007 Digital Television System.
[A/65C]	ATSC A/65C: Program and System Information Protocol for Terrestrial Broadcast and Cable (Revision C, with Amendment No. 1).
[BPI+]	CM-SP-BPI+-C01-081104, Data-Over-Cable Service Interface Specifications, Baseline Privacy Plus Interface Specification, November 4, 2008, Cable Television Laboratories, Inc.
[CANN-DHCP]	CL-SP-CANN-DHCP-Reg-I09-120809, CableLabs DHCP Options Registry Specification, August 9, 2012, Cable Television Laboratories, Inc.
[CCCP]	CableCARD Copy Protection 2.0 Specification, OC-SP-CCCP2.0, Cable Television Laboratories, Inc. Referenced in [OC-BUNDLE].
[CCIF]	CableCARD Interface 2.0 Specification, OC-SP-CCIF2.0, Cable Television Laboratories, Inc. Referenced in [OC-BUNDLE].
[CDL]	Common Download 2.0, OC-SP-CDL2.0, Cable Television Laboratories, Inc. Referenced in [OC-BUNDLE].
[CEA 708C]	CEA 708C: Digital Television (DTV) Closed Captioning, July 30, 2006.
[CEA-23-A]	CEA-23-A: RF Interface Specification for Television Receiving and Cable Television Systems, December 2004.
[CEA-542-B]	EIA/CEA-542-B: Cable Television Channel Identification Plan.
[CEA-608-D]	CEA-608-D: Recommended Practice for Line 21 Data Service, August 1, 2005.
[CEA-766-B]	CEA-766-B: U.S. Regional Rating Table (RRT) and Content Advisory Descriptor for Transport of Content Advisory Information Using ATSC A/65 Program and System Information Protocol (PSIP).
[CEA-861-E]	CEA-861-E: A DTV Profile for Uncompressed High Speed Digital Interfaces, March 2008.

[CEP]	OC-SP-CEP3.0-I04-121210, OpenCable Content Encoding Profiles 3.0 Specification, December 10, 2012, Cable Television Laboratories, Inc.
[DSG]	CM-SP-DSG-I23-130404, DOCSIS Set-top Gateway (DSG) Interface Specification, April 4, 2013, Cable Television Laboratories, Inc.
[DVS 714]	SCTE DVS 714, Constraints on AVC Video Coding for Digital Program Insertion.
[eDOCSIS]	CM-SP-eDOCSIS-I25-130404, Data-Over-Cable Service Interface Specifications, eDOCSIS Specification, April 4, 2013, Cable Television Laboratories, Inc.
[ETSI TS 101 154 v1.8.1]	Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB); Specification for the use of Video and Audio Coding in Broadcasting Applications based on the MPEG-2 Transport Stream.
[HDCP]	High-bandwidth Digital Content Protection System, Digital Content Protection LLC.
[HDMI]	High-Definition Multimedia Interface, Specification Version 1.3a, November 10, 2006.
[HNP2.0]	OpenCable Home Networking Protocol 2.0, OC-SP-HNP2.0, Cable Television Laboratories, Inc. Referenced in [OC-BUNDLE].
[HOST-HN]	OpenCable Host Home Networking Extension 2.0, OC-SP-HOST-HN2.0, Cable Television Laboratories, Inc. Referenced in [OC-BUNDLE].
[HOST-MIB]	OpenCable Host Device 2.X MIB Specification, OC-SP-MIB-HOST2.X, Cable Television Laboratories, Inc. Referenced in [OC-BUNDLE].
[IPv6]	CM-SP-DOCSIS2.0-IPv6-I07-130404, DOCSIS 2.0 + IPv6 Cable Modem Specification, April 4, 2013, Cable Television Laboratories, Inc.
[ISO 11172-3]	ISO/IEC 11172-3, 1993: Information technology—Generic coding of moving pictures and associated audio for digital storage media up to about 1.5 Mbits/s - Part 3: Audio.
[ISO 13818-1 /Amd 3]	ISO/IEC 13818-1:2000/Amendment 3, 2004: Transport of AVC video data over ITU-T Rec. H.222.0 ISO/IEC 13818-1 streams.
[ISO 13818-1]	ISO/IEC 13818-1, 2000: Information technology—Generic coding of moving pictures and associated audio (MPEG): Systems.
[ISO 13818-2]	ISO/IEC 13818-2, 2000: Information technology—Generic coding of moving pictures and associated audio (MPEG): Video.
[ISO 14496-10]	ISO/IEC 14496-10:2005: Information technology - Coding of audio-visual objects - Part 10: Advanced Video Coding.
[ISO 14496-3]	ISO/IEC 14496-3, 2005: Information technology - Coding of audio-visual objects - Part 3 Audio including amendment 1: "Bandwidth Extension" and amendment 2 "Parametric coding for High Quality Audio".
[MULPIv3.0]	CM-SP-MULPIv3.0-I21-130404, DOCSIS 3.0 MAC and Upper Layer Protocols Interface Specification, April 4, 2013, Cable Television Laboratories, Inc.
[OC-BUNDLE]	OC-SP-BUNDLE, OpenCable Bundle Requirements. See Section 2.3.1 to acquire this specification.
[OC-SEC]	OpenCable System Security Specification, OC-SP-SEC, Cable Television Laboratories, Inc. Referenced in [OC-BUNDLE].
[OCAP]	OpenCable Application Platform (OCAP), OC-SP-OCAP, Cable Television Laboratories, Inc. Referenced in [OC-BUNDLE].
[OCAP-FP]	OCAP Front Panel Extension, OC-SP-OCAP-FPEXT, Cable Television Laboratories, Inc. Referenced in [OC-BUNDLE].
[OSSIV2.0]	CM-SP-OSSIV2.0-C01-081104, Data-Over-Cable Service Interface Specifications, Operations Support System Interface Specification, November 4, 2008, Cable Television Laboratories, Inc.

- [OSSIV3.0] CM-SP-OSSIV3.0-I21-130404, DOCSIS 3.0 Operations Support System Interface Specification, April 4, 2013, Cable Television Laboratories, Inc.
- [RFC 1112] Host Extensions for IP Multicasting.
- [RFC 1157] A Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP).
- [RFC 1305] Network Time Protocol (Version 3) Specification, Implementation and Analysis.
- [RFC 1901] Introduction to Community-based SNMPv2.
- [RFC 1902] Structure of Management Information for Version 2 of the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMPv2).
- [RFC 2030] Simple Network Time Protocol (SNTP) Version 4 for IPv4, IPv6 and OSI
- [RFC 2131] Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol.
- [RFC 2132] DHCP Options and BOOTP Vendor Extensions.
- [RFC 2669] DOCSIS Cable Device MIB Cable Device Management Information Base for DOCSIS compliant Cable Modems and Cable Modem Termination Systems.
- [RFC 2790] Host Resources MIB.
- [RFC 2863] The Interfaces Group MIB.
- [RFC 3203] DHCP reconfigure extension. Y. T'Joens, C. Hublet, P. De Schrijver. December 2001.
- [RFC 3315] Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol for IPv6.
- [RFC 3396] Encoding Long Options in the Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCPv4).
- [RFC 3411] An Architecture for Describing Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) Management Frameworks.
- [RFC 3412] Message Processing and Dispatching for the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP).
- [RFC 3413] Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) Applications.
- [RFC 3414] User-based Security Model (USM) for version 3 of the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMPv3).
- [RFC 3415] View-based Access Control Model (VACM) for the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP).
- [RFC 3416] Version 2 of the Protocol Operations for the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP).
- [RFC 3417] Transport Mappings for the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP).
- [RFC 3418] Management Information Base (MIB) for the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP).
- [RFC 3419] Textual Conventions for Transport Addresses (SNMP).
- [RFC 3584] Coexistence between Version 1, Version 2, and Version 3 of the Internet-standard Network Management Framework.
- [RFC 3646] DNS Configuration Options for Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol for IPv6.
- [RFC 3927] Dynamic Configuration of IPv4 Link-Local Addresses. S. Cheshire, B. Aboba, E. Guttman. May 2005.
- [RFC 4291] IP Version 6 Addressing Architecture.
- [RFC 4293] Management Information Base for the Internet Protocol (IP).
- [RFC 4861] Neighbor Discovery for IP Version 6.
- [RFC 4862] IPv6 Stateless Address Autoconfiguration.
- [RFC 5246] The Transport Layer Security (TLS) Protocol Version 1.2. T. Dierks, E. Rescorla. August 2008.
- [RFIV2.0] CM-SP-RFIV2.0-C02-090422, Data-Over-Cable Service Interface Specifications, Radio Frequency Interface Specification, April 22, 2009, Cable Television Laboratories, Inc.

[SCTE 02]	ANSI/SCTE 02, 2006: Specification for "F" Port (Female, Indoor) Physical Dimensions.
[SCTE 07]	ANSI/SCTE 07, 2006: Digital Transmission Standard for Cable Television.
[SCTE 127]	ANSI/SCTE 127, 2007: Carriage of Vertical Blanking Interval (VBI) Data in North American Digital Television Bitstreams.
[SCTE 128]	ANSI/SCTE 128, 2010-a: AVC Video Systems and Transport Constraints for Cable Television.
[SCTE 18]	SCTE 18, 2007 (ANSI-J-STD-042-2007): Emergency Alert Message for Cable.
[SCTE 20]	ANSI/SCTE 20, 2004: Method for Carriage of Closed Captions and Non-Real Time Sampled Video. Note: Non-Real Time Sampled Video support is "optional" for Host Devices.
[SCTE 21]	ANSI/SCTE 21, 2001 R2006: Standard for Carriage of NTSC VBI Data in Cable Digital Transport Streams.
[SCTE 28]	ANSI/SCTE 28, 2007: HOST-POD Interface Standard.
[SCTE 40]	ANSI/SCTE 40, 2004: Digital Cable Network Interface Standard.
[SCTE 43]	ANSI/SCTE 43, 2005: Digital Video Systems Characteristics Standard for Cable Television.
[SCTE 54]	ANSI/SCTE 54, 2009: Digital Video Service Multiplex and Transport System Standard for Cable Television.
[SCTE 55-1]	ANSI/SCTE 55-1, 2009: Digital Broadband Delivery System: Out-of-Band Transport Part 1: Mode A.
[SCTE 55-2]	ANSI/SCTE 55-2, 2008: Digital Broadband Delivery System: Out-of-Band Transport Part 2: Mode B.
[SCTE 65]	ANSI/SCTE 65, 2008: Service Information Delivered Out-of-Band for Digital Cable Television.
[tru2way License]	tru2way Host Device License Agreement
[tru2way]	http://www.tru2way.com/
[UPnP DA]	UPnP Device Architecture Version 1.0: UPnP Device Architecture Specification Version 1.0.1, UPnP Forum, July 20, 2006.

2.2 Informative References

This specification uses the following informative references.

[CEA-516]	CEA-516, 1998: Joint EIA/CVCC Recommended Practice for Teletext: North American Basic Teletext Specification (NABTS)
[CEA-2020]	CEA-2020, 2006: Other VBI Waveforms
[IEC 61880]	IEC 61880: Video Systems (525/60) - Video and Accompanied Data using the Vertical Blanking Interval - Analogue Interface
[MIL-C-39012]	MIL-C-39012: General Specifications for Connectors, Coaxial, Radio Frequency.
[SMPTE 12M]	SMPTE 12M, 2002: Television, Audio and Film - Time and Control Code
[TIA-250-C]	EIA/TIA-250-C: Electrical Performance Standards for Television Relay Facilities.

2.3 Reference Acquisition

2.3.1 OpenCable Bundle Requirements

The OpenCable Bundle Requirements specification [OC-BUNDLE] indicates the set of CableLabs specifications required for the implementation of the OpenCable Bundle. The version number of [OC-BUNDLE] corresponds to the release number of the OpenCable Bundle that it describes. One or more versions of [OC-BUNDLE] reference this specification. Current and past versions of [OC-BUNDLE] may be obtained from CableLabs at <http://www.cablelabs.com/opencable/specifications>.

2.3.2 Other References

CableLabs Specifications:

Cable Television Laboratories, Inc., 858 Coal Creek Circle, Louisville, CO 80027;
Phone: +1-303-661-9100; Fax +1-303-661-9199; <http://www.cablelabs.com/>

DDWG Specifications:

Digital Display Working Group (DDWG), M/S JF3-361; 2111 NE 25th Avenue, Hillsboro, OR 97124-5961, USA. Fax +1-503-264-5959; Email: ddwg.if@intel.com; Internet: www.ddwg.org

DVB/ETSI Specifications:

www.dvb.org; www.etsi.org

FCC Specifications:

<http://wireless.fcc.gov/rules.html>

HDCP Specifications and License

Digital Content Protection, LLC, C/O Intel Corporation, Stephen Balogh, JF2-55, 2111 NE 25th Ave Hillsboro, OR 97124; <http://www.digital-cp.com/>

HDMI Specifications

HDMI Licensing, LLC, 1060 E. Arques Avenue, Suite 100, Sunnyvale, CA 94085, USA; <http://www.hdmi.org/>

ISO/IEC Standards:

ISO Central Secretariat: International Organization for Standardization (ISO), 1, rue de Varembé, Case postale 56, CH-1211 Geneva 20, Switzerland; Internet: <http://www.iso.ch/>

SCTE/DVS Standards:

SCTE - Society of Cable Telecommunications Engineers Inc., 140 Philips Road, Exton, PA 19341
Phone: +1-610-363-6888 / +1-800-542-5040; Fax: +1-610-363-5898; <http://www.scte.org/>

UPnP Specifications:

<http://www.upnp.org/>

3 OVERVIEW OF CORE SERVICES AND FUNCTIONALITIES

3.1 OpenCable Host Thin Chassis components

This section describes the core services that OCTCDs support, as well as the core functions required to implement those services. A block diagram of the OCTCD components is shown below.

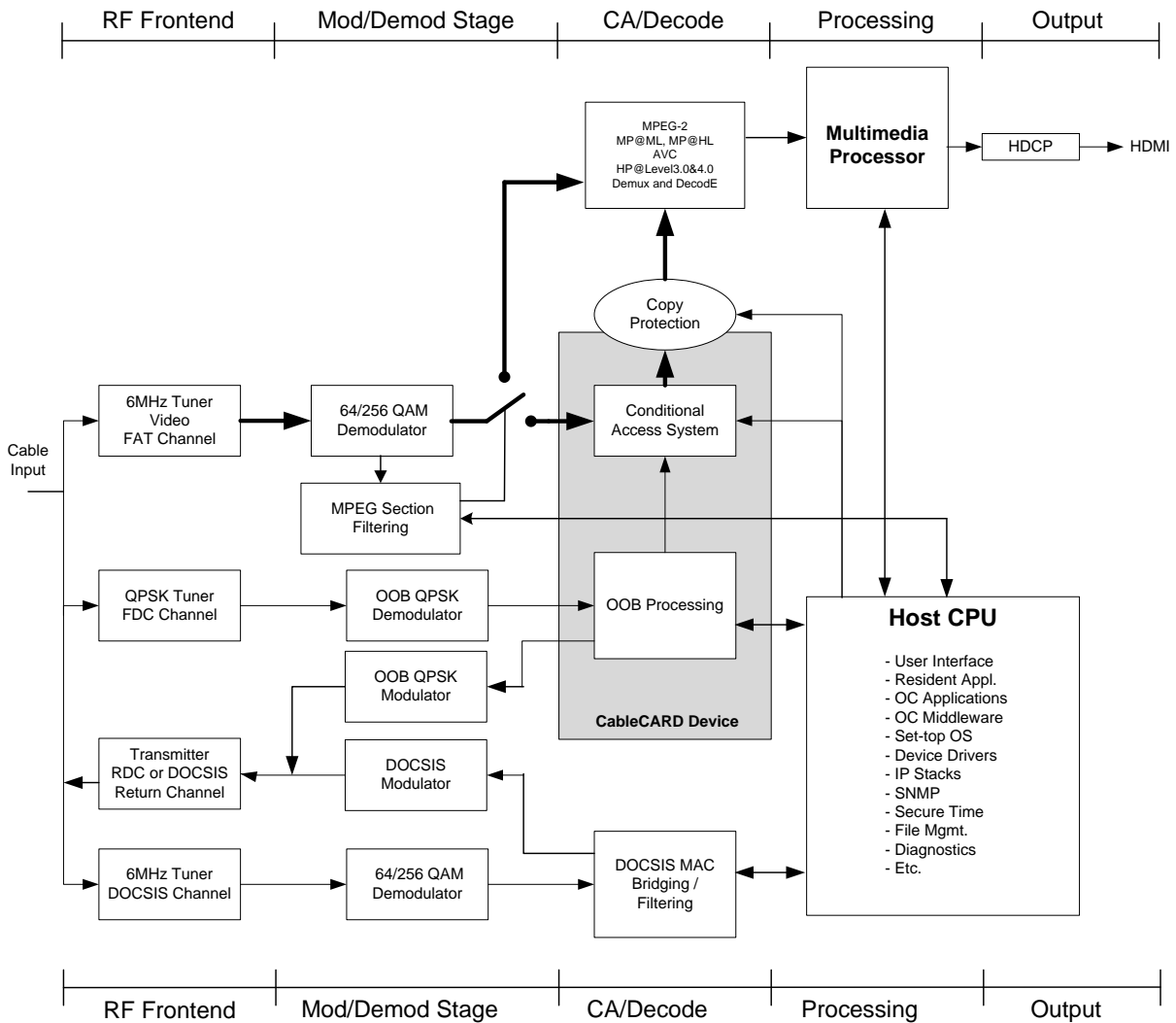


Figure 3.1-1 - Block Diagram of the OpenCable Thin Chassis Device (Informative)

The OCTCD receives multimedia information by tuning to one of many 6 MHz input channels available via a bi-directional cable connection. When the input channel is a digital channel, it is processed via the QAM demodulator and then passed to the CableCARD Device where secure and scrambled information is processed. Unscrambled

information is passed through the CableCARD Device to the MPEG-2 Transport Demultiplexer. When the CableCARD Device is not inserted, the output of the QAM demodulator is routed directly to the MPEG-2 Transport Demultiplexer. The multi-media processor handles the synchronization and display of audio-visual material.

Based on the network configuration, the OCTCD receives control information and other data by either tuning to an Out-Of-Band (OOB) Forward Data Channel (FDC) channel or via the DSG channel. The Out-Of-Band mode is communicated by the CableCARD Device to the Host via the CableCARD Interface [CCIF]. The transport of the OOB (FDC / RDC) messaging is detailed in [SCTE 55-2] and [SCTE 55-1]. The transport of the DSG messaging is detailed in [DSG]. The Host cannot assume which mode is supported on the network; therefore both modes must be available within the Host.

The OpenCable Thin Chassis Device implements a subset of the Host 2.1 CFR. The only required output is a HDMI connection which allows the OCTCD to be paired with a retail DTV receiver and controlled over the HDMI CEC bus using remote control key passthrough. The HDMI connection implements the standard CEC operations defined in [HDMI] but also allows for proprietary communication between OCTCD and a DTV using vendor-specific messaging.

3.1.1 Core Services (Informative)

The following services are provided by the Core Requirements for OCTCDs:

- Digital audio-visual programming utilizing MPEG-2 main profile @ main level and main profile @ high level video and Dolby AC-3 audio including broadcast (unscrambled), subscription-based (scrambled), music channels, Impulse Pay-Per-View (scrambled), VOD and Subscription VOD (scrambled), Switched digital broadcast and other interactive services.
- Digital audio-visual programming utilizing AVC Main and High profile @Level 3.0 and 4.0 video (as specified in [SCTE 128]) and Dolby AC-3, E-AC-3, MPEG-1 AUDIO and MPEG-4 AUDIO (referred in this document) including broadcast (unscrambled), subscription-based (scrambled), music channels, Impulse Pay-Per-View (scrambled), VOD and Subscription VOD (scrambled), Switched digital broadcast and other interactive services.
- [OCAP] based interactive applications.

3.1.2 Core Functions and Features (Informative)

The following features and functions are necessary to support the core services:

- Input range of 54-1002 MHz, digital (64/256-QAM) tuning and demodulation
- Emergency Alert System signaling (compliant with [SCTE 18])
- QPSK Out-Of-Band receiver compliant with [SCTE 55-2] and [SCTE 55-1]
- QPSK Out-Of-Band transmitter compliant with [SCTE 55-2] and [SCTE 55-1]
- CableCARD digital interface (see OpenCable CableCARD Interface 2.0 Specification [CCIF])
- OpenCable CableCARD Copy Protection 2.0 Specification [CCCP]
- Out-Of-Band messaging via [DSG]
- An embedded cable modem with DSG functionality compliant with [RFIV2.0] or [MULPIV3.0]
- High-Definition Multimedia Interface (HDMI) for uncompressed digital video with CEC capability and HDCP encryption
- Implementation of [OCAP] middleware including processing of interactive services

3.2 General Compliance (Normative)

Any features of an OCTCD mandated by law or FCC regulation (e.g., Emergency Alert System, V-Chip) will be supported in the Core Requirements for all OCTCDs.

The OCTCD manufacturer SHALL confirm compliance with all applicable FCC rules and regulations.

The OCTCD manufacturer SHALL confirm compliance with all applicable UL rules and regulations.

4 SECURITY

This section describes requirements for copy protection of video programs, security of video streams, conditional access to video streams, and security of transmitted data.

4.1 Conditional Access

The OCTCD SHALL utilize the Card to perform the following Conditional Access functions as defined in [CCCP]: CA descrambling, authorization, entitlement, and Copy Protection encryption.

The OCTCD SHALL NOT implement the following Conditional Access functions: CA descrambling, authorization, entitlement, and Copy Protection encryption.

4.2 Partitioning of Memory

Memory in the OCTCD SHALL be partitioned such that separate partitions are maintained solely for the operation of CableLabs-certified software, which is not to be overwritten by any mechanism other than those specified in [CDL] and [OC-SEC].

The CableLabs certified software in OCTCD memory partitions SHALL have sole access to the Out-of-Band channels.

4.3 Certificate Storage and Management

The OCTCD SHALL store the various certificates and any associated private/public keys as defined in [OC-SEC].

4.4 Digital Program Copy Protection

The OCTCD SHALL implement M-Mode copy protection as defined in [CCCP].

The OCTCD SHALL ignore any OCAP commands that would change the effect of CCI received from the Card.

The OCTCD SHALL include CA descriptors, in the ca_pmt() APDU, associated with the CA_system_id passed by the Card, in the ca_info() APDU, omitting CA descriptors associated with other CA system IDs.

The OCTCD SHALL acquire the association between MPEG program number, ECM-PID and elementary stream PIDs, for the purposes of CP-encryption and CCI authentication, either before sending the transport stream to the Card or after receiving it back from the Card.

The OCTCD SHALL acquire MPEG program number, ECM-PID, and elementary stream packet ID for all content by filtering the MPEG transport stream, either before output to or after reception from the Card interface, but not both.

5 BI-DIRECTIONAL PHYSICAL LAYER CHARACTERISTICS

5.1 RF Interface

The OCTCD SHALL comply with the mechanical and electrical interface requirements as defined in section 3 of [CEA-23-A].

5.1.1 Maximum Individual Carrier Amplitude

The OCTCD SHALL be capable of meeting the FAT and FDC channel performance requirements in the presence of interfering signals, where the maximum RMS value of any individual interfering signal does not exceed the following limits (measured across 75 Ohms):

0.5 MHz to 42 MHz +42 dBmV

42 MHz to 52 MHz 0 dBmV

52 MHz to 54 MHz -17 dBmV

The maximum rms value of any individual signal whose frequency exceeds 54 MHz is less than +20 dBmV across a 75 ohm terminating impedance measured at the input to the Host Device.

5.2 Communication Channels

The OCTCD SHALL have the following communication channels:

Forward Application Transport (FAT) channels which carry MPEG-2 Program Streams

Forward Data Channel (OOB FDC)

Reverse Data Channel (OOB RDC)

DOCSIS downstream and upstream channels

DSG tunnels using DOCSIS downstream channels

Note: The frequency range for each downstream tuner or upstream transmitter is:

- 54 to 1002 MHz (FAT channel and DOCSIS downstream)
- 70 to 130 MHz (OOB FDC channel)
- 5 to 42 MHz (OOB RDC channel and DOCSIS upstream).

The OCTCD MAY utilize Set-top Extender Bridge (SEB) services via the Home Network for interactive IP traffic as defined in [DSG]. This optional method supplements DOCSIS downstream and upstream channels in cases where two-way communications are required but the Host is unable to acquire an upstream channel.

5.2.1 Forward Application Transport (FAT) Channel

The forward application transport channel is a 64 or 256 Quadrature Amplitude Modulation (QAM) channel, according to [SCTE 07], that transports approximately 27 or 39 megabits/second, respectively. The OCTCD is instructed to tune to a particular FAT channel when a subscriber requests a service that requires transport on a FAT channel. FAT channels that are present on the cable plant will adhere to the STD, HRC or IRC frequency plans of [CEA-542-B] and can be located anywhere in the 54 to 1002 MHz range.

The OCTCD SHALL be capable of receiving and demodulating a Forward Application Transport channel with either 64- or 256-QAM modulation.

The OCTCD SHALL be compliant with [SCTE 07] for the transmission physical layer modulation and coding.

5.2.2 Out-Of-Band Signaling

5.2.2.1 OOB-FDC and OOB-RDC

The RF front end provides the generic QPSK physical layer common to the OpenCable choices. These have the following characteristics:

Forward receiver: 1.544/3.088 Mbps and 2.048 Mbps

Reverse transmitter: 1.544/3.088 Mbps and 256 Kbps

Based on the network configuration, the Out-Of-Band Messaging for the OpenCable Host Device is implemented over the OOB-FDC / OOB-RDC communication channels or the DSG communication channel. The Out-Of-Band mode is communicated by the Card to the Host via the CableCARD Interface.

The OCTCD SHALL be capable of receiving an Out-Of-Band Forward Data channel and passing the demodulated signal to the Card per [CCIF].

The OCTCD SHALL be compliant with [SCTE 55-2] and [SCTE 55-1] for the OOB FDC and OOB RDC transmission physical layer modulation.

The OCTCD SHALL have an Out-Of-Band Reverse Data Channel QPSK transmitter used only under control of the Card as specified in [CCIF].

5.3 Physical Layer Specifications

5.3.1 FAT Channel, FDC Characteristics and RF Performance

The OCTCD SHALL decode the Forward Application Transport channel over the range of input parameters as defined in Table 5.3-1 while operating with the downstream transmission characteristics defined by [SCTE 40].

The OCTCD SHALL tune and receive digital signals that fall within the ranges specified in Table 5.3-1 (QAM signals).

Table 5.3-1 - FAT Channel: RF Performance Parameters (0° - 40° C)

	Parameter	Requirement
1.	RF Input Channel Bandwidth	6 MHz
2.	RF Input Tuning Range	54 MHz to 1002 MHz IRC/HRC/STD Channel Plans

	Parameter	Requirement
3.	RF Input Return Loss	6 dB minimum over full tuning range
4.	RF Input Impedance	75 ohm unbalanced
5.	RF Input Level Range	Digital QAM 64 signal from -15 dBmV to +15 dBmV; Digital QAM 256 signal from -12 dBmV to +15 dBmV
7.	AFC Range	Better than ± 125 kHz or nominal tuning resolution of 62.5 kHz
8.	LO Leakage (Input EMC)	-37 dBmV over 54 MHz to 1002 MHz
16.	Signal Leakage/RFI	Per [47CFR15]
19.	Group Delay Variation Tolerance	≤ 0.25 μ sec/MHz across the 6-MHz channel
20.	Phase Noise Tolerance	≤ -88 dB/Hz @ 10 kHz offset (relative to the center of QAM signal spectrum)
21.	Amplitude Ripple Tolerance Digital channels	≤ 5 dB p-p within the 6 MHz channel
22.	Micro-reflection Tolerance (assumes one dominant echo with max. specified amplitude in dB relative to the primary QAM signal)	-10 dB at < 0.5 μ sec -15 dB at < 1 μ sec -20 dB at < 1.5 μ sec -30 dB at < 4.5 μ sec Echoes > 4.5 μ sec (see Note 1)
23.	Burst Noise Tolerance	Not longer than 25 μ sec at 10 Hz repetition rate
25.	Spurious Emissions, 5 - 1002 MHz	< -37 dBmV
<p><i>Table Notes:</i></p> <p>1. <i>Micro-reflection longer than 4.5 microseconds rarely occur in conventional cable television systems. Moreover, very low-level micro-reflections (e.g., -40dB) longer than 4.5 microseconds cannot be measured reliably with readily available instruments. Studies on the subject of long Micro-reflections are continuing, which may result in quantifying this parameter at a future date.</i></p>		

The OCTCD SHALL meet all FDC performance parameters specified in Table 5.3-2 while operating with the downstream transmission characteristics defined by [SCTE 40].

The OCTCD SHALL tune and receive digital signals that fall within the ranges specified in Table 5.3-2 (QPSK FDC signals).

Table 5.3-2 - FDC Channel: RF Performance Parameters (0° - 40° C)

	Parameter	Requirement
1.	Transmission Rate	1.544/3.088 Mbps [SCTE 55-2] 2.048 Mbps [SCTE 55-1]
2.	RF Input Channel Spacing	1.0/2.0 MHz [SCTE 55-2] 1.8 MHz [SCTE 55-1]
3.	RF Input Tuning Range	70 MHz to 130 MHz
4.	Nominal carrier frequency	Any integer multiple of 250 kHz between the minimum and maximum carrier frequencies, inclusive and the specific fixed frequency of 104.200 MHz.
5.	Frequency acquisition range	+/- 50 ppm

	Parameter	Requirement																								
6.	RF Input level range	-15 to +15 dBmV rms (75 ohms) (See Note 1)																								
7.	Differential Encoding	The differential encoder SHALL accept bits (A, B) in sequence and generate phase changes as follows: <table border="0"> <tr> <td>A</td> <td>B</td> <td>Phase Change</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td>default</td> <td>alternative</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>none</td> <td>none</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>+90 deg</td> <td>-90 deg</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>-90 deg</td> <td>+90 deg</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>180 deg</td> <td>180 deg</td> </tr> </table>	A	B	Phase Change				default	alternative	0	0	none	none	0	1	+90 deg	-90 deg	1	0	-90 deg	+90 deg	1	1	180 deg	180 deg
A	B	Phase Change																								
		default	alternative																							
0	0	none	none																							
0	1	+90 deg	-90 deg																							
1	0	-90 deg	+90 deg																							
1	1	180 deg	180 deg																							
8.	Group Delay variation tolerance	200 ns max in channel, measured over Nyquist bandwidth																								
9.	Channel Tune / Carrier acquisition time	< 500ms																								
<p><i>Table Notes:</i></p> <p>1. See Section 5.3.1.2 for the variation in level between adjacent channels</p>																										

The OCTCD SHALL use a female "F" connector meeting [SCTE 02] for the RF input.

The "F" connector for RF input on the OCTCD SHALL be labeled "Cable In."

5.3.1.1 DOCSIS Downstream Channel

The downstream RF performance parameters for the eCM of the OpenCable Host Device are detailed in either [RFiv2.0] for DOCSIS 2.0 implementations or [MULPIv3.0] for DOCSIS 3.0 implementations.

5.3.1.2 RF Signal Levels and Adjacent Channel Characteristics

5.3.1.2.1 RF Signal Levels

To determine the adjacent channel characteristics between digital and analog signals, the following information is provided. The nominal relative carrier power levels for analog and digital signals are given by:

- Analog channel: 0 dBc (reference level)
- 256-QAM FAT: -5 ± 2 dBc
- QPSK FDC: -8 ± 5 dBc
- 64-QAM FAT: -10 ± 2 dBc

The OCTCD SHALL be capable of receiving a digital signal with an average RMS signal power that is within ± 6 dB of its nominal level with respect to the nominal level of the adjacent channel digital or analog signal.

It is noted that the nominal carrier power levels provided above fall within the absolute power range for digital signals, -15 dBmV to +15 dBmV. The nominal analog signal power is measured as the peak envelope power (PEP), which is the average of all the analog RMS carrier power levels measured during horizontal sync level. The nominal digital signal power is measured as the average of all the digital RMS signal power levels.

5.3.1.2.2 Adjacent Channel Characteristics

The OCTCD SHALL be capable of receiving digital signals with Adjacent Channel performance as characterized in Table 5.3-3.

Table 5.3-3 - Adjacent Channel Characteristics

	Desired (D) Channel Modulation	Undesired (U) Adjacent Channel Modulation	Worst Case D/U Ratio
4.	64-QAM	Analog NTSC	-21 dB
5.	64-QAM	256-QAM	-21 dB
6.	64-QAM	QPSK FDC	-21 dB
7.	256-QAM	Analog NTSC	-16 dB
8.	256-QAM	64-QAM	-11 dB
9.	256-QAM	QPSK FDC	-16 dB
10.	QPSK FDC	Analog NTSC	-22 dB
11.	QPSK FDC	64-QAM	-17 dB
12.	QPSK FDC	256-QAM	-22 dB

5.3.1.3 Combined Distortion Characteristics

The OCTCD SHALL be capable of receiving digital 64-QAM with characteristics:

Level = -10 dBmV on channel 82

Interleaver depth of greater than or equal to I=64 (J=2)

33 dB C/N

-18 dB ghost at 0.5 us

25 us burst noise not greater than -15 dBmV at 10 Hz rep rate

The OCTCD SHALL be capable of receiving digital 256-QAM with characteristics:

Level = -7 dBmV on channel 82

Interleaver depth of greater than or equal to I=64 (J=2)

36 dB C/N

-18 dB ghost at 0.5 us

16 us burst noise not greater than -12 dBmV at 10 Hz rep rate

5.3.2 Upstream Transmission Characteristics

The upstream transmitter of the OCTCD SHALL meet the performance requirements from the combined OpenCable RDC specifications, as specified in Table 5.3-4, and the DOCSIS return channel specifications as specified in either [RFIv2.0] for DOCSIS 2.0 implementations or [MULPIv3.0] for DOCSIS 3.0 implementations.

Table 5.3-4 - Reverse Data Channel RF & Modulation Performance Parameters (0° - 40° C)

	Parameter	Values for OOB-RDC																								
1.	Transmission Rate	1.544/3.088 Mbps [SCTE 55-2] 256 Kbps [SCTE 55-1]																								
2.	Output Channel Spacing	1.0/2.0 MHz [SCTE 55-2] 192 KHz [SCTE 55-1]																								
3.	Modulation type	Differentially-Encoded QPSK only																								
4.	RF Output Frequency Range	5 MHz to 42 MHz edge-to-edge																								
5.	Frequency Step Size Granularity (Note 1)	2 KHz																								
6.	Frequency Accuracy	+/- 50 ppm																								
7.	Differential Encoding	The differential encoder SHALL accept bits (A, B) in sequence and generate phase changes as follows: <table border="0"> <tr> <td>A</td> <td>B</td> <td>Phase Change</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td>default</td> <td>alternative</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>none</td> <td>none</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>+90 deg</td> <td>-90 deg</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>-90 deg</td> <td>+90 deg</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>180 deg</td> <td>180 deg</td> </tr> </table>	A	B	Phase Change				default	alternative	0	0	none	none	0	1	+90 deg	-90 deg	1	0	-90 deg	+90 deg	1	1	180 deg	180 deg
A	B	Phase Change																								
		default	alternative																							
0	0	none	none																							
0	1	+90 deg	-90 deg																							
1	0	-90 deg	+90 deg																							
1	1	180 deg	180 deg																							
8.	Quadrant Mapping	<p style="text-align: right;">QPSK</p>																								
13.	I/Q amplitude imbalance	< 1 dB																								
14.	I/Q phase imbalance	< 2 degree																								
15.	Transmit level range at Host RF connector.	8 to 57 dBmV																								
16.	Level step size	< 2 dB																								
17.	Level absolute accuracy	< +/- 2 dB																								
18.	Level flatness, 5 - 42 MHz	< 2 dB																								
19.	Spurious outputs, 5 - 42 MHz	< -45 dBc																								
20.	Harmonic outputs, 10 - 42 MHz	< -45 dBc																								
21.	Out-of-band spurious and harmonics, 54 - 1002 MHz	< -37 dBmV																								
22.	Noise Power Density, as measured +/- f _w /2 from center channel frequency, where f _w is the channel spacing. Carrier level > 35 dBmV	> 113 dBc in 1 Hz																								

	Parameter	Values for OOB-RDC
23.	Noise Power Density, 5 to 42 MHz when transmitter is idle	< - 105 dBmV (1 Hz) 75 ohms
24.	Return Loss, 75 ohms, 5 to 14 MHz 14 to 26 MHz 26 to 42 MHz	> 9 dB > 11 dB > 6 dB

6 CABLECARD INTERFACE

The OCTCD provides an interface to the CableCARD Device to facilitate the processing of digital information received over the forward application transport (FAT) channel and the OOB forward data channel (FDC) or the OOB channel using the DOCSIS DSG tunnels [DSG]. The interface between the OCTCD and the Card is described in [CCIF].

The OCTCD SHALL only implement the Host side of the Multi-Stream (M-Mode) CableCARD Interface according to [CCIF].

The OCTCD SHALL be constructed to accommodate CableCARD devices having a physical length that may vary from 85 mm up to and including 102 mm.

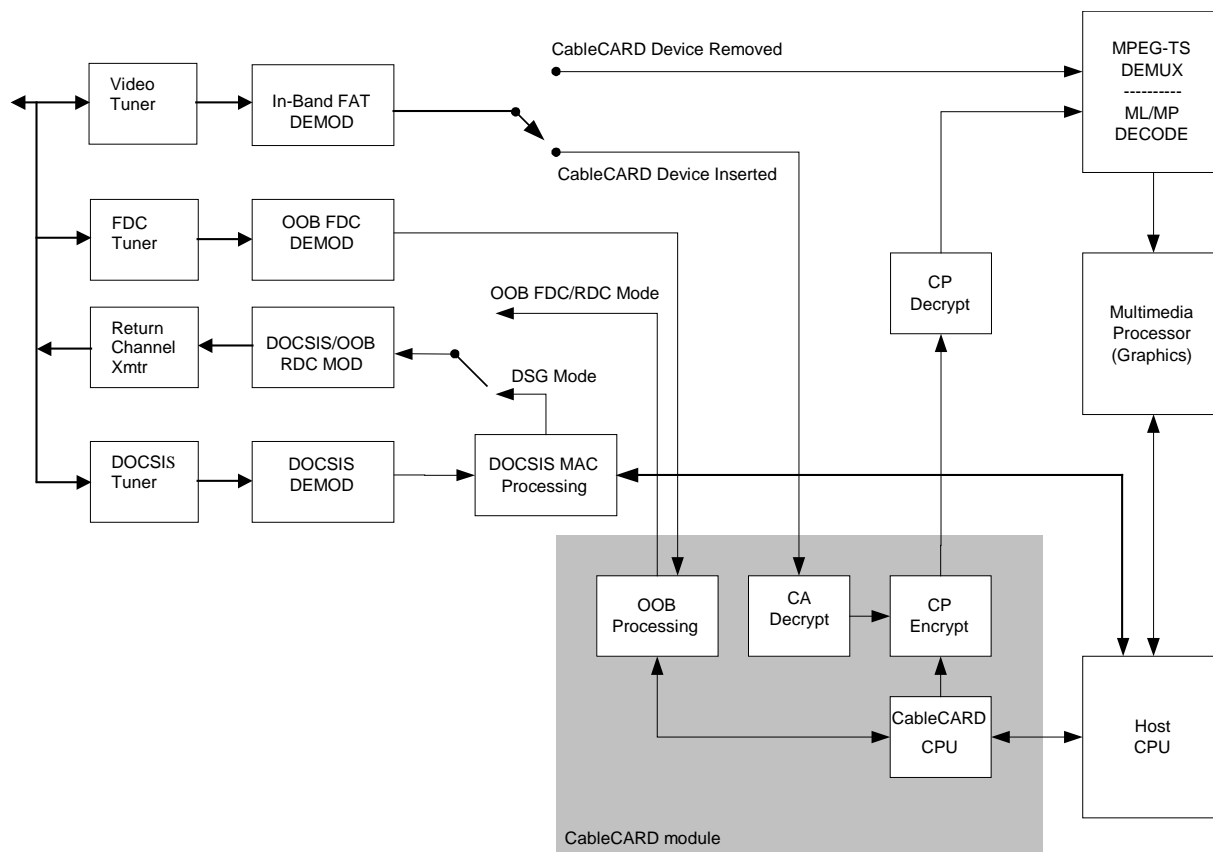


Figure 6-1 - Block Diagram of the OpenCable CableCARD Interface (Informative)

6.1 OpenCable Host Device Functionality without a CableCARD Device

Although the OCTCD will function without a CableCARD Device and process digital signals received via the FAT channels, it is expected that these signals will be processed directly by the clear QAM decoders in the attached DTV. The OCTCD will have the following minimum functional characteristics without the CableCARD Device.

When the OCTCD is operating without a Card, it MAY discover, decode and output unscrambled digital standard definition and high definition audio-visual programming conforming to MPEG-2 Main Profile @ Main Level or

Main Profile @ High Level and Dolby AC-3 audio as specified in table 3 of [SCTE 43] and transported according to STD, HRC or IRC frequency plans as specified in [CEA-542-B].

When the OCTCD is operating without a Card, it MAY discover, decode and output unscrambled digital standard definition and high definition audio-visual programming conforming to AVC Main and High Profile @ Level 3.0 and 4.0 as specified in [SCTE 128] with Dolby AC-3, E-AC-3, MPEG-1 AUDIO and MPEG-4 AUDIO as referred in this document and transported in adherence to STD, HRC or IRC frequency plans as specified in [CEA-542-B].

When the OCTCD is operating without a Card and is tuned to a digital transport stream containing multiple programs, it MAY identify each program by the one-part channel number specified in the CVCT delivered in the in-band PSIP [A/65C] stream, if such data is present.

Each program MAY be identified by the two-part channel number if the one-part channel number is not specified in the CVCT.

When the OCTCD is operating without a Card and is tuned to a digital transport stream containing multiple programs, it MAY identify each program by the two-part channel number specified in the TVCT, in the absence of the CVCT delivered in the in-band PSIP [A/65C] stream, if such data is present.

When the OCTCD is operating without a Card, it MAY process in-band System and Service Information, for programs that are transported unscrambled, in accordance with section 5.5 of [SCTE 54].

When the OCTCD is operating without a Card, it SHALL NOT use any channel map previously created from OOB data while operating with a Card.

When the OCTCD is operating without a CableCARD Device, it SHALL disable the Reverse Data Channel (RDC) and eCM transmit function.

When the OCTCD is operating without a Card, it SHALL NOT use the Set-top Extender Bridge (SEB).

6.2 Man Machine Interface (MMI) Support

The OCTCD will be capable of operating in a unidirectional system and will support copy protection in this operational case. As defined in the OpenCable Copy Protection 2.0 Specification [CCCP] for a unidirectional system, the copy protection system performs authorization utilizing the MMI resource.

The OCTCD SHALL support a navigation method to allow user navigation with the MMI resource defined in [CCIF].

6.3 Software

6.3.1 Middleware

The OCTCD SHALL contain a certified implementation of [OCAP].

6.3.2 Software Download

The OCTCD SHALL support the download of a Monolithic or Segmented Firmware Image [eDOCSIS] according to the transmission and security protocols specified in [CDL].

The OCTCD SHALL support upgrade of the following functional components by mechanisms specified in [CDL] in a manner that does not compromise the integrity of the separate components:

- embedded Cable Modem (eCM) code including DSG functionality

- OACAP implementation including any underlying Operating System (OS)

- persistent applications such as the Navigation system

For example, an upgrade to DSG functionality must not affect the behavior of the OACAP environment or persistent applications.

6.4 Host MAC Address

The OCTCD is required to have a unique MAC address. The MAC address will be utilized by the headend as a means to associate a requested IP address with the OCTCD.

The OCTCD SHALL have a unique 48-bit MAC address.

- The first 24 bits of the MAC address SHALL consist of an Organizationally Unique Identifier (OUI) assigned to an OCTCD vendor by the IEEE.

- The remaining 24 bits of the MAC address SHALL consist of a unique 24-bit value that is generated by the OCTCD vendor.

- The unique 48-bit MAC address SHALL be associated with the eSTB when operating in DSG mode.

The OCTCD SHALL have a unique 48-bit MAC address assigned for each OACAP Home Networking interface [HOST-HN] providing functionality that is separate from the eSTB MAC address.

6.5 Support for Local Time Calculation

The OCTCD SHALL implement calculation of local time by using the following parameters:

- system_time with GPS_UTC_offset as defined in [SCTE 65]

- time_zone_offset from the Generic Feature Control time_zone() message

- daylight_savings_control, daylight_savings_delta, daylight_savings_entry_time, and daylight_savings_exit_time from the Generic Feature Control daylight_savings() message

Note: Similar information may be present in the SCTE 65 daylight_savings_time_descriptor(). Currently SCTE 65 Profiles 1 and 2 don't allow daylight_savings_time_descriptor() for this descriptor to be present in the system_time_table_section() message.

The OCTCD SHALL NOT use the daylight_savings_time_descriptor() if received in the system time table as defined in [SCTE 65].

6.6 Generic Feature Control Resource Requirements

The OCTCD SHALL include every non-reserved feature ID in table 9.15-2 of [CCIF] each time it sends the feature_list() APDU to the Card.

The OCTCD SHALL store the generic features listed in Table 6.6-1 in such a way that the OCTCD does not have to query the Card each time the OCTCD needs to know the value of one of the generic features.

If the Card supports a generic feature that is not in Table 6.6-1, the OCTCD SHALL accept the generic feature when sent from the Card in the feature_parameters() APDU, but is not required to store the value.

Table 6.6-1 - Generic Features Stored in the Host

Generic Feature
RF Output Channel
Purchase PIN
Parental Control PIN
Timezone
Daylight Savings Control
AC Outlet
Language
Rating Region
EAS Location Code
VCT_ID
Turn On Channel
Terminal Association
Common Download Group ID
Zip Code
RF Output Channel

The OCTCD SHALL set aside a minimum of 256 bytes to store the terminal association generic feature. If the terminal association generic feature is longer than 256 bytes, the OCTCD MAY truncate its value.

The OCTCD SHALL set aside a minimum of 10 bytes to store the zip code generic feature. If the zip code generic feature is longer than 10 bytes, the OCTCD MAY truncate its value.

6.7 Card SNMP Message Support

6.7.1 Support Functionality (Informative)

The OCTCD provides a limited form of SNMP communication by proxy support (i.e., queries and sets) for Cards. This enables the Card to utilize the OCTCD SNMP agent's communication capabilities with the Network Management System (NMS) to transport vendor-specific diagnostic information to network managers.

Figure 6.7-1 presents the initial flow of a single query, an SNMP GetRequest.

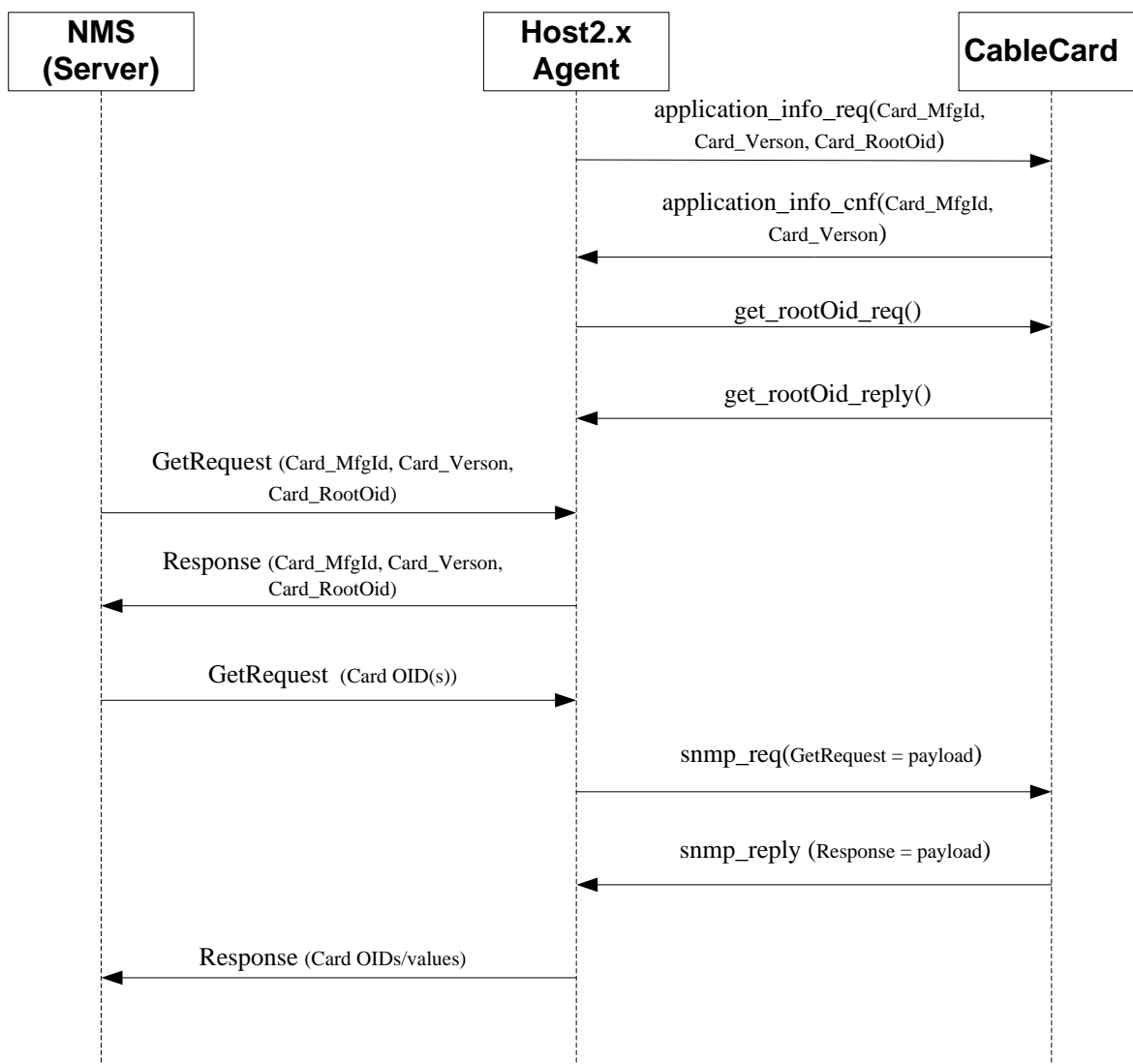


Figure 6.7-1 - Initial Flow of an SNMP GetRequest

The data exchange overview follows.

1. During initialization, the Card may open a session to the Card Access MIB resource (not shown here).
2. The Host collects the Card manufacturer/vendor Identifier, version, MAC address, serial number, and manufacturer/vendor private MIB root object identification (OID) for the Card. Note that in some cases the CA system identifier may be required to resolve the exact Card root OID. This can be found in the Host2.x MIB object, `ocStbHostCASystemIdentifier`.
3. The Host stores the information in the Host2.x MIB. It may be transferred later to the headend via standard SNMP GetRequests.
4. The headend NMS uses the private Card MIB to form the SNMP queries (GetRequests and GetNextRequests). Note that the Host Thin Chassis IP address is the PDU destination - not the Card.
5. The Host Thin Chassis examines the variable-binding list and determines which entries are 1) invalid, 2) objects managed by the Host SNMP Agent, and 3) prefixed by the Card root OID. In this diagram, one or more

VARBIND OIDs that match the Card root OID are extracted from the original GetRequest and transferred in the *snmp_req()* APDU.

6. The Card will build a properly formatted SNMP Response PDU and send it to the Host Thin Chassis in the *snmp_reply()* APDU.
7. The OCTCD will extract the OID and its value from the Response PDU and add it to the SNMP response that will be sent to the NMS at the headend.

Note that the Card MIB is not part of the OCTCD Host MIB. Therefore, an SNMP walk of the Host MIB will not include any of the Card MIB OIDs.

6.7.2 Mixed Object Identifier Processing (Informative)

Mixed Object Identifiers¹, or mixed OIDs, may be contained in a variable-binding list sent to a Host in SNMP queries or modifications. The NMS may send such an SNMP request to the Host and it will expect a single response from the agent regardless of the number of bindings in the request. The agent will examine the variable-binding list and will process each binding as follows.

1. Each object managed directly by the Host agent will be paired with its current value and added to the variable-binding list that will be sent to the NMS in the Response-PDU.
2. All objects managed by the Card (i.e., an object in the Card MIB subtree), will be sent in one or more SNMP messages, each encapsulated in the payload of a *snmp_req()* APDU.
3. The Host will wait a finite period of time for the Card to return the completed variable-binding list in an *snmp_reply()* APDU.
4. After receiving a reply, the Host adds the Card variable-binding list to the Response-PDU and then sends the Response PDU to the NMS.

An example of a GetNextRequest with mixed OIDs follows.

For the purposes of this example, assume the following MIB objects exist for the Host and the Card.

- Host managed objects: sysUpTime, ocStbCardBindingStatus
- Card managed objects: cardStatus, cardChannelMap (note that these are fictitious for demonstrative purposes only)

The OID names will be used instead of the ASN.1 encoded values. The SNMP request PDU format is included here to clarify the terms and phrases used throughout this section.

Version	Community	PDU-type	Req_Id	Error Status	Error Index	Variable-Binding List
---------	-----------	----------	--------	--------------	-------------	-----------------------

Figure 6.7-2 - SNMP Request PDU format

The NMS sends a GetRequest-PDU to the host for the objects listed above. Figure 6.7-3 represents the three steps required to build and return a Response-PDU.

¹ The Host may receive SNMP messages containing mixed OID requests, which are defined as messages specifying some OIDs destined for the Host and other OIDs destined for the Card.

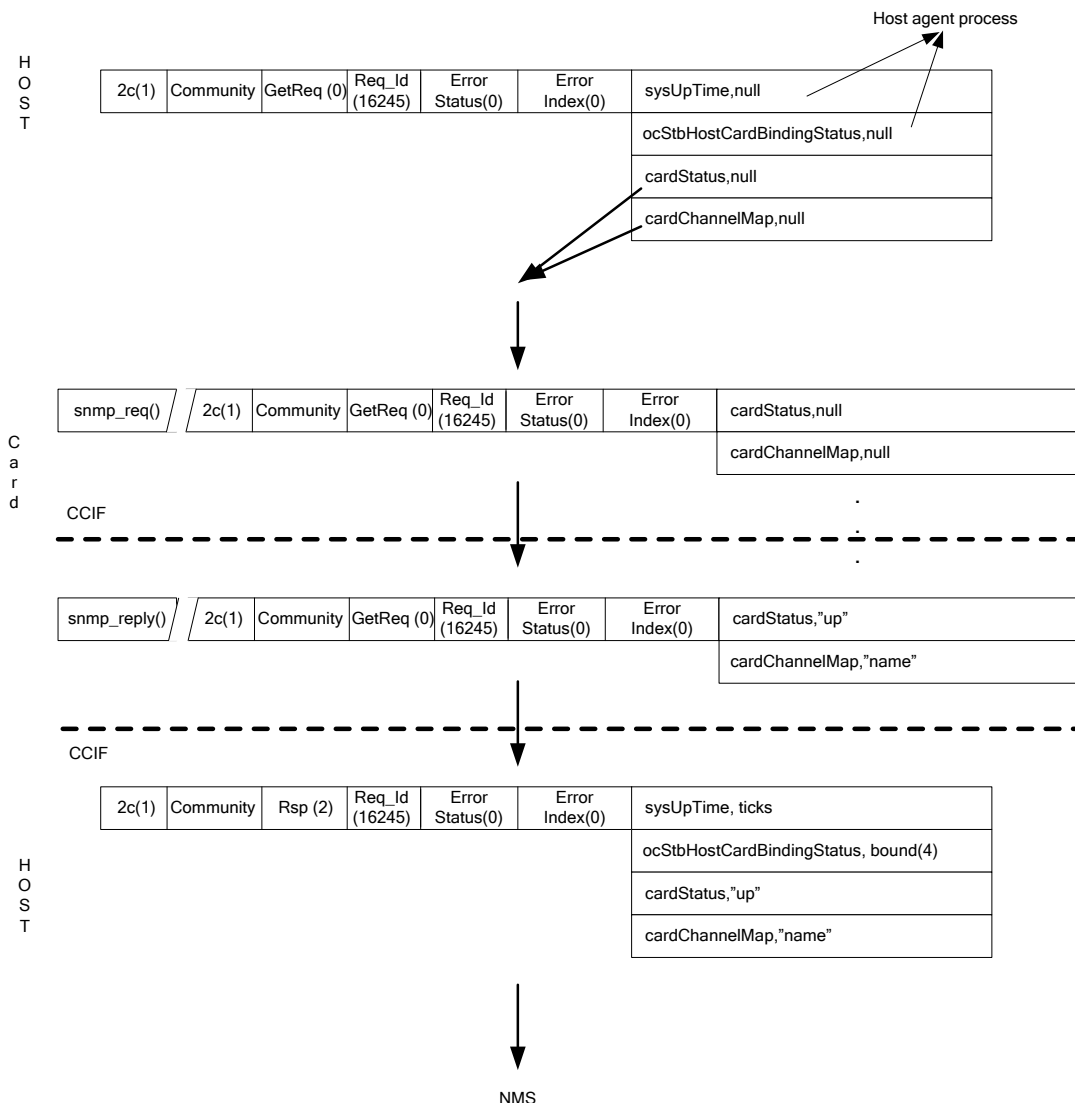


Figure 6.7-3 - Example Response-PDU

- In this example, the Host agent processes the MIB objects it manages.
- The agent identifies the two card objects as part of the Card subtree by comparing the OID prefixes to the ocStbHostCardRootOid. The Host modifies the variable-binding list by reducing it to those OIDs managed by the Card. It encapsulates the GetRequest in the *snmp_req()* and forwards it to the Card for processing. The Host will wait for the Card's response or a timeout.
- The Card retrieves the values for the OIDs in the GetRequest and returns the completed variable-binding list to the Host in the *snmp_reply()* APDU.
- The Host combines the variable-bindings from the Card with those it processed for the objects it manages into a single SNMP Response-PDU.

6.7.3 GetBulkRequest Processing (Informative)

GetBulkRequest PDUs require more processing by the Host agent on behalf of the Card. Specifically, the agent will convert the GetBulkRequests into GetNextRequests to be sent to the Card. The number of GetNextRequests to be

formed and transmitted to the Card is dependent on the GetBulkRequest-PDU fields, *non-repeaters* and *max-repetitions*. Notice in the PDU format in Figure 6.7-4 that the error indicators of the SNMP request/response PDUs have been replaced.

Version	Community	PDU-type	Req_Id	Non Repeaters	Max Repetitions	Variable-Binding List
---------	-----------	----------	--------	---------------	-----------------	-----------------------

Figure 6.7-4 - GetBulkRequest PDU format

See [RFC 3416] for the explanation of these fields during normal GetBulkRequest processing by an agent. This proxied GetBulkRequest example demonstrates how these fields will inform the GetNextRequest creation and transmission by the Host agent.

Assume the following in this example.

- The GetBulkRequest variable-binding list is restricted to Card OIDs, although this is not a restriction.
- No errors are encountered by the Host agent or the Card.
- Four Card OIDs in the GetBulkRequest in the variable-binding list. Two OIDs are non-repeaters and two OIDs are subject to max-repetitions (i.e., two "repeaters").
- All Card OIDs in Table 6.7-1 below are demonstrative only and do not reflect any Card manufacturer's implementation.
- Each table in the example has only one conceptual row instantiated; thus, each GetNextRequest will generate a columnar value instead of multiple instantiations of a single "column".

Table 6.7-1 - GetBulkRequest example

Object Name	OID	Value
cardVersion	1.3.6.1.4.1.9876.2.3.1	"1.2.3.a"
cardStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.9876.2.3.2	"operational"
cardPgmStatusTable	1.3.6.1.4.1.9876.2.3.1.4.6	
cardPgmStatusTableEntry	1.3.6.1.4.1.9876.2.3.1.4.6.1	
cardPgmStatusTableIndex	1.3.6.1.4.1.9876.2.3.1.4.6.1.1	1 (not accessible)
cardPgmStatusProgramNumber	1.3.6.1.4.1.9876.2.3.1.4.6.1.2	33
cardPgmStatusCCI	1.3.6.1.4.1.9876.2.3.1.4.6.1.3	0x00
cardAppTable	1.3.6.1.4.1.9876.2.3.1.4.7	
cardAppTableEntry	1.3.6.1.4.1.9876.2.3.1.4.7.1	
cardAppTableIndex	1.3.6.1.4.1.9876.2.3.1.4.7.1.1	1 (not accessible)
cardAppName	1.3.6.1.4.1.9876.2.3.1.4.7.1.2	"sample"
cardAppStatus	1.3.6.1.4.1.9876.2.3.1.4.7.1.3	"not responding"

Figure 6.7-5 offers a graphic representation of the GetBulkRequest sent by the NMS to the Host.

2c(1)	Community	GetBulk (5)	Req_Id (1673)	Non Repeaters(2)	Max Repetitions (2)	cardVersion,null
						cardStatus,null
						cardPgmStatusTable,null
						cardAppName,null

Figure 6.7-5 - GetBulkRequest

The number of GetNextRequests the Host must generate and send to the card is six, based on the following calculation:

Total GetNextRequests = N + (M * R), where

N is the minimum of

- the value of the Non-Repeaters field in the request
- the number of variable bindings in the request

M is the Max-Repetitions field of the request.

R is the maximum of

- the total number of variable bindings in the request - N
- zero

The Repeaters count, R, is typically derived by subtracting the number of Non-Repeaters from the total number of OIDs in the GetBulkRequest variable-binding list (i.e., Repeaters = Total # OIDs - Non-Repeaters).

In other words, the Host performs a simple GetNextRequest for the first N variable-bindings in the request and performs M GetNextRequests for each of the remaining R variable-bindings in the request list.

Table 6.7-2 depicts the flow of GetNextRequests that the Host generates and sends to the Card in response to the GetBulkRequest. The message sequence begins *after* receiving the GetBulkRequest from the NMS and ends immediately prior to sending the Response-PDU.

Table 6.7-2 - Flow of GetNextRequests

Message	Direction Host--Card	OID	VARBIND Value
GetNext	→	1.3.6.1.4.1.9876.2.3.1	--
Response	←	1.3.6.1.4.1.9876.2.3.1.0	"1.2.3.a"
GetNext	→	1.3.6.1.4.1.9876.2.3.2	--
Response	←	1.3.6.1.4.1.9876.2.3.2.0	"operational"
GetNext	→	1.3.6.1.4.1.9876.2.3.1.4.6	--
Response	←	1.3.6.1.4.1.9876.2.3.1.4.6.1.1.1	1
GetNext	→	1.3.6.1.4.1.9876.2.3.1.4.6.1.1.1	--
Response	←	1.3.6.1.4.1.9876.2.3.1.4.6.1.2.1	33
GetNext	→	1.3.6.1.4.1.9876.2.3.1.4.7.1.2	--

Message	Direction Host--Card	OID	VARBIND Value
Response	←	1.3.6.1.4.1.9876.2.3.1.4.6.1.2.1.1	"sample"
GetNext	→	1.3.6.1.4.1.9876.2.3.1.4.6.1.2.1.1	--
Response	←	1.3.6.1.4.1.9876.2.3.1.4.6.1.2.2.1	"not responding"

The GetBulkRequest Response-PDU is graphically presented below.

Version 2c(1)	Community	Response (2)	Req_Id (1673)	Error Status (0)	Error Index (0)	
						cardVersion,"1.2.3.a"
						cardStatus,"up"
						cardPgmStatusProgramNumber,33
						cardPgmStatusCCI,0x00
						cardAppName,"sample"
						cardAppName,"not responding"

Figure 6.7-6 - GetBulkRequest Response-PDU

The Response-PDU uses the same Request ID as that contained in the original GetBulkRequest. In addition, the six variable-bindings are returned instead of the four originally received.

6.7.4 Support Requirements (Normative)

Note: For the purposes of this section, the term "SNMP queries" is interchangeable with SNMP GetRequest and GetNextRequest PDUs. GetBulkRequests require special processing by the OCTCD agent.

The OCTCD SHALL discard any SNMP packet targeted for the Card other than GetRequest, GetNextRequest, GetBulkRequest, and SetRequest PDUs.

The OCTCD agent SHALL format and send GetRequest, GetNextRequest, and SetRequest PDUs to the Card using the *snmp_req()* APDU as defined in [CCIF].

The OCTCD agent SHALL accept Response-PDUs from the Card using the *snmp_reply()* APDU.

The OCTCD SHALL determine that the Card supports SNMP message processing if the Card requests that a session be opened to the Card Access MIB resource.

The OCTCD SHALL send a *get_rootOid_req()* APDU to request the root OID of the Card MIB after the Card has opened a session to the MIB resource. The Card MIB is expected to be defined in the private namespace of the Card manufacturer's MIB.

The OCTCD SHALL store the Card root OID in the Host2.x MIB [HOST-MIB].

The OCTCD SHALL store a 0.0 for the Card root OID object in the Host2.x MIB [HOST-MIB] until the Card opens a session to the Card Access MIB resource.

SNMP message processing support requires the NMS send all SNMP "queries" and "sets" for either the OCTCD or Card to the OCTCD IP address. Upon receiving each message, the OCTCD determines the final destination(s) of the message by examining the OID(s) in the embedded VARBIND list.

The OCTCD SHALL support SNMPv2c GetRequest, GetNextRequest, GetBulkRequest, and SetRequest PDUs on behalf of the Card.

The OCTCD SHALL send a modified SNMP GetRequest, GetNextRequest, and SetRequest PDUs to the Card on behalf of the NMS if the original message contains mixed OIDs.

The OCTCD SHALL send SNMP GetRequest, GetNextRequest, and SetRequest PDUs to the Card encapsulated in an *snmp_req()* APDU containing only OIDs in the Card's MIB subtree.

The OCTCD SHALL combine the VARBIND lists from the OCTCD agent and the *snmp_reply()* APDU from the Card to create a single SNMP Response-PDU with the same Request ID carried in the original GetRequest, GetNextRequest, or SetRequest PDU. This Response-PDU will be forwarded to the SNMP NMS.

The OCTCD SHALL set a response timeout value of five seconds that will be used to determine that a response is not forthcoming from the Card. If a response is not received after sending the request in a period less than this value, the Host will discard the original request.

The OCTCD SHALL process GetBulkRequests on behalf of the Card as follows:

The OCTCD SHALL use GetNextRequests to acquire the variable-bindings from the Card.

The OCTCD SHALL send a single GetNextRequest to the Card for each Card OID contained in the first N variable-bindings in the GetBulkRequest variable-binding list, where N is defined in Section 6.7.3.

The OCTCD SHALL send a sequence of M GetNextRequests for each of the remaining R variable-bindings that contain a Card OID, where M and R are defined in Section 6.7.3.

If the Card responds to a GetNextRequest with an "EndofMIBView", the OCTCD SHALL terminate further GetNextRequests for the current repeating sequence.

If the Card responds to a GetNextRequest with an error, the OCTCD SHALL send a Response-PDU to the NMS with this error and terminate the GetBulkRequest processing.

The OCTCD SHALL combine the GetNext Responses from the Card with any variable-bindings generated by the host SNMP agent as a result of the same GetBulkRequest (e.g., Host2.x MIB objects). The combined variable-bindings list will be sent to the NMS in a single Response-PDU subject to limitations specified in [RFC 3416].

7 MULTI-MEDIA INTERFACES

7.1 OpenCable Host Input Devices

The OCTCD SHALL be supplied with at least one input device with the following characteristics:

The input device SHALL support all of the required keys identified in [OCAP] table 25-5.

The four required function keys SHALL be identified as shown in Table 7.1-1.

The keys corresponding to certain KeyEvents SHALL be labeled as shown in Table 7.1-2.

Table 7.1-1 - Function Key Shapes and Colors

Function Key	Shape	Color
Function Key 0	Circle	Red: Pantone 200
Function Key 1	Diamond	Green: Pantone 355
Function Key 2	Square	Blue: Pantone 300
Function Key 3	Triangle	Yellow: Pantone 803

Table 7.1-2 - Key Event Labels

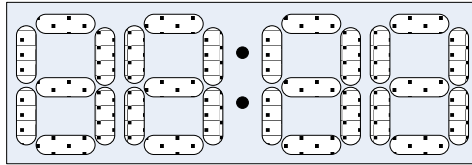
KeyEvent	Key Label
VK_ENTER	Select
VK_GUIDE	Guide
VK_MENU	Menu
VK_INFO	Info
VK_EXIT	Exit
VK_LAST	Last
VK_NEXT_FAVORITE_CHANNEL	Favorite
VK_ON_DEMAND	On Demand

7.2 OpenCable Host Front Panel

The OCTCD MAY incorporate a front panel display that is separate from a main video display.

If the OCTCD incorporates a front panel display to support the OCAP Front Panel Extension API, as specified in Annex A of [OCAP-FP], it SHALL incorporate at least a POWER Display and MESSAGE Display, and at least 4-digit 7-segment display in a format such that time may be displayed and include a colon in the middle of the display.

The following is an example of a 4-digit 7-segment display:



If the OCTCD is designed with a front panel display to support the OCAP Front Panel Extension API and includes RF Bypass functionality, it SHALL incorporate an RF BYPASS display that is active when the RF Bypass is active.

If the OCTCD is designed with a front panel display, the MonitorAppPermission javadoc SHALL contain an additional row in the permissions table as defined in [OCAP-FP].

frontpanel	Allows use of the front panel API.	Allows an application to get the front panel manager singleton and use the front panel API to modify the front panel display.
------------	------------------------------------	---

If the OCTCD implements the OCAP Front Panel Extension API, the Document Type Definition of the Permission Request File SHALL contain a “frontpanel” entry in the OCAP:MonitorAppPermission element as defined in [OCAP-FP].

8 VIDEO

8.1 Digital Video

The OCTCD is required to handle digital transport streams according to the following requirements.

The OCTCD SHALL have the capability to tune digital channels from 54 to 1002 MHz according to the STD, IRC, and HRC channel plans as defined in [CEA-542-B].

8.1.1 MPEG-2 Transport

The OCTCD SHALL be able to demultiplex and decode a MPEG-2 video (stream type 0x02 or 0x80) within a MPEG-2 transport multiplex compliant to [SCTE 54] containing both MPEG-2 video (stream type 0x02 or 0x80) [SCTE 43] and AVC video (stream type 0x1B) [SCTE 128].

The OCTCD SHALL be able to demultiplex and decode an AVC video (stream type 0x1B) within a MPEG-2 transport multiplex compliant to [SCTE 54] containing both MPEG-2 video (stream type 0x02 or 0x80) [SCTE 43] and AVC video (stream type 0x1B) [SCTE 128].

The OCTCD SHOULD use audio muting and black frames to mask the effect of disruptions and interruptions during all channel changes.

When switched between two reference² digital channels with same picture resolution within the same multiplex and the same video coding standard, the OCTCD SHALL be capable of acquiring and displaying signals with no disruption lasting longer than 2.0 seconds (secs).³

When switched between two reference² digital channels with same picture resolution within the same multiplex and the same video coding standard, the outputs of any OCTCD SHALL have no interruption lasting longer than 2.0 seconds (secs).⁴

When switched between two reference² digital channels with different picture resolutions in the same multiplex and the same video coding standard, the OCTCD SHALL be capable of acquiring and displaying signals with no disruption lasting longer than 2.0 seconds (secs).³

When switched between two reference² digital channels with different picture resolutions in the same multiplex and same video coding standard, the outputs of any OCTCD SHALL have no interruption lasting longer than 2.0 seconds (secs).⁴

When switched between two reference² digital channels with different picture resolutions in different multiplexes and the same video coding standard, the OCTCD SHALL be capable of acquiring and displaying signals with no disruption lasting longer than 2.5 seconds (secs).³

When switched between two reference² digital channels with different picture resolutions in different multiplex and the same video coding standard, the outputs of any OCTCD SHALL have no interruption lasting longer than 2.5 seconds (secs).⁴

² For this requirement a reference signal with a MPEG2 video with GOP structure = 30 frames or a reference signal with an AVC video stream having a SRAP at 1 second intervals will be used. The reference stream will ensure the difference between PTS and PCR for SRAP is less than or equal to 500ms.

³ With respect to channel changes, the term "disruptions" includes: black frames, picture instability, macroblocking, freeze-frames, audible artifacts including muting.

⁴ With respect to channel changes, the term "interruption" includes: loss-of-signal, black-frames, freeze-frames, discontinuities, macroblocking, audible artifacts including muting.

When switched between two reference² digital channels with same picture resolutions in different multiplexes and the same video coding standard, the OCTCD SHALL be capable of acquiring and displaying signals with no disruption lasting longer than 2.5 seconds (secs).³

When switched between two reference² digital channels with same picture resolutions in different multiplex and the same video coding standard, the outputs of any OCTCD SHALL have no interruption lasting longer than 2.5 seconds (secs).⁴

When switched between two reference² digital channels with different video coding standards, the OCTCD SHALL be capable of acquiring and displaying signals with no disruption lasting longer than 2.5 seconds (secs).³

When switched between two reference² digital channels with different video coding standards, the outputs of any OCTCD SHALL have no interruption lasting longer than 2.5 seconds (secs).⁴

The OCTCD SHALL store System Information tables (e.g., NTT, NIT and VCT) required to build the video channel map in non-volatile memory with a minimum storage size of 20 Kbytes.

The OCTCD SHALL store the XAIT table, as defined in [OCAP], in non-volatile memory with a minimum storage size of 16 Kbytes.

8.1.2 Digital Video Decoding

The OCTCD AVC decoder SHALL be able to parse and decode the normative elements from [ISO 14496-10] that are specified with constraints in [SCTE 128].

The OCTCD AVC decoder SHALL NOT be adversely affected by the presence or absence of optional and informative elements from [ISO 14496-10].

The OCTCD AVC decoder SHALL NOT be adversely affected by the presence or absence of optional and informative elements specified in [SCTE 128].

The OCTCD AVC decoder SHALL be able to parse and process all the 'in-band' normative elements from [ISO 14496-10] Annex D (SEI messages) and Annex E (VUI syntax elements) that are specified with constraints in [SCTE 128].

Note: Even though these are optional elements in the AVC specification, which allows applications to convey these elements either in-band or out-of-band, [SCTE 128] mandates transmission of some of these elements in-band.

The OCTCD AVC decoder SHALL be able to parse and process all the normative elements from [ISO 13818-1 /Amd 3] that are specified with constraints in [SCTE 128].

The OCTCD AVC decoder SHALL NOT be adversely affected by the presence or absence of optional elements from [ISO 13818-1] (such as data in adaptation headers) that are specified with constraints in [SCTE 128]. These optional elements or information specified in [SCTE 128] may be present for the benefit of AVC receivers that support dedicated applications such as PVR, DPI, VOD, etc.

The OCTCD AVC decoder SHALL be capable of processing AVC bitstreams that have profile_idc = 100 and the constraints on SPS/VUI/PPS parameters specified in [SCTE 128].

The OCTCD AVC decoder SHALL be capable of processing AVC bitstreams that have profile_idc(s) = 77 and the constraints on SPS/VUI/PPS parameters specified in [SCTE 128].

The OCTCD SHALL be able to process all of the VUI syntax elements specified in Table 7 of [SCTE 128].

The OCTCD SHALL process AVC streams with the constraints specified in Tables 9A, 9B, and 9C of [SCTE 128] and correctly process the no_output_of_prior_pics_flag in the IDR picture of sequence after the transition in horizontal resolution only.

In all other cases the OCTCD can infer no_output_of_prior_pics_flag = 1 and clear the DPB buffer.

The OCTCD AVC decoder SHALL discard any unrecognized SEI payloads encountered in the video bit stream.

The OCTCD SHALL be able to decode all MPEG-2 formats in Table 3 of [SCTE 43].

The OCTCD AVC decoder SHALL be able to decode all AVC formats in Table 9 of [SCTE 128].

The OCTCD SHALL be able to convert the decoded picture to the selected resolution of any supported output interface.

The OCTCD SHALL decode MPEG-2 Main Profile @ Main Level and Main Profile @ High Level per [ISO 13818-2] with the constraints and extensions that apply to video as specified in [A/53].

The OCTCD SHALL decode AVC Main and High Profile @ Level 3.0 and 4.0 as specified in [SCTE 128] with the constraints and extensions that apply to video as specified in Table 9 of [SCTE 128].

The OCTCD SHALL decode MPEG-2 video with resolutions shown in Table 3 of [SCTE 43].

The OCTCD SHALL decode AVC video with resolutions shown in Table 9 in [SCTE 128].

The OCTCD SHALL decode MPEG-2 video with aspect ratios listed in Table 3 of [SCTE 43].

The OCTCD SHALL decode AVC video with aspect ratios listed in Table 9 of [SCTE 128].

The OCTCD MPEG-2 decoder SHALL support decoding of an MPEG-2 Main Profile @ High Level Single Program Transport Stream encoded at a constant bit rate (CBR) of 38.81070 Mbps or variable bit rate (VBR), with peak rates up to 38.81070 Mbps, the maximum payload rate for a 256-QAM channel.

The OCTCD AVC decoder SHALL be capable of decoding an AVC Main and High Profile @ Level 3.0 and 4.0 video elementary stream encoded at a maximum bit rate as specified in Annex A of [ISO 14496-10].

Note: The bit rate value for the AVC Bitstream is application-dependent and limited by the contiguous bandwidth of the transmission channel. In the application of AVC transmission over a 64-QAM channel, bit rate value, in combination with other components in the MPEG-2 Transport multiplex, conforms to a channel bit-rate of less than or equal to 27.0 Mbps; in transmissions over 256-QAM channels to less than or equal to 38.8107 Mbps.

The OCTCD MPEG-2 decoder SHALL support error concealment to minimize macroblock and stream synchronization errors.

The OCTCD AVC decoder SHALL support error concealment to minimize macroblock and stream synchronization errors.

Note: Standard test streams for MPEG-2 and AVC with known errors will be used to evaluate error concealment implementations.

The OCTCD AVC decoder SHALL process end_of_stream_rbsp() syntax elements required by applications, such as DPI, where another bitstream follows the end_of_stream NAL unit.

The OCTCD AVC decoder SHALL process the bitstream following an `end_of_stream_rbsp()` syntax element. The bitstream following the `end_of_stream` NAL unit will start with an IDR picture in accordance with [SCTE 128], may signal an SRAP (in accordance with [DVS 714]) and may be accompanied by a time base discontinuity.

If the first picture output from the DPB for the following bitstream does not immediately follow the last output picture from the DPB for the stream with `end_of_stream_rbsp()` syntax element, then the OCTCD AVC decoder SHALL repeat the last output picture from the DPB until the first picture from the following bitstream is output from the DPB.

For streams that conform to [SCTE 128]/[DVS 714] where only the horizontal resolution changes in SPS, the OCTCD AVC decoder SHALL NOT infer the `no_output_of_prior_pics_flag` to be '1' when it is set to '0' in the IDR access unit.

The OCTCD AVC decoder SHALL correctly process the `no_output_of_prior_pics_flag` in the IDR access unit that follows the access unit with an `end_of_stream_rbsp()`.

If the `no_output_of_prior_pics_flag` is set to '0', then the OCTCD AVC decoder SHALL output all of the decoded pictures in the DPB.

If the `no_output_of_prior_pics_flag` is set to '1', then the OCTCD AVC decoder SHALL NOT output and SHALL clear the pictures in the DPB.

In all other cases (such as vertical resolution or frame rate changes in SPS), the OCTCD AVC decoder can infer the `no_output_of_prior_pics_flag` to be '1' even though it is set to '0'.

8.1.3 Digital Television (DTV) Out-of-Band Service/System Information

The OCTCD SHALL process out-of-band System and Service Information [SCTE 65] that is sent across the CableCARD interface in Extended Channel data flows, using `Service_type = MPEG_section`, as defined in [CCIF], or sent in a DSG broadcast tunnel that is terminated directly.

The OCTCD SHALL be able to extract the channel map used for program navigation from the System Information tables for all profiles specified in [SCTE 65].

8.1.4 Digital Television (DTV) Closed Captioning

The OCTCD SHALL extract NTSC closed captioning information when present in the MPEG-2 Picture Level `user_data` as specified in section 4 of [CEA 708C] or as specified in [CEA-608-D] and transported according to [tru2way License] or [SCTE 20]. This will include all data of `cc_type` 00 and 01, as defined in [CEA 708C].

Note: There may be other closed captioning and extended data structures present in the MPEG-2 Picture Level `user_data`.

The OCTCD SHALL extract the Digital Television closed captioning (DTVCC) information when present in the MPEG-2 Picture Level `user_data`, as specified in section 9 of [CEA 708C] and delivered according to [tru2way License] using an extension to the Picture Level `user_data` defined in [A/53] (with `cc_type` set to '10' or '11').

The OCTCD SHALL extract the Digital Television closed captioning (DTVCC) information when present in the AVC video stream as specified in [CEA 708C] and delivered according to [SCTE 128].

In the case where an MPEG Picture Level `user_data` is transported according to [tru2way License] or [SCTE 20], the OCTCD MAY use closed captioning data recovered from either standard.

The OCTCD SHALL process the caption_service_descriptor, when present, as defined in [A/65C] and carried in either the PMT of the in-band MPEG-2 transport stream or passed across the CableCARD Interface Extended Channel when receiving profile 4, 5 or 6 of [SCTE 65].

8.1.5 Digital Television (DTV) Content Advisory Information

To support the interoperable availability of content advisory information for Host Devices and/or CableCARD Devices, OpenCable specifies the use of MPEG-2 Picture Level user_data found in [tru2way License], the content_advisory_descriptor passed across the CableCARD Interface Extended Channel, or the content_advisory_descriptor found in section 6.9.3 of [A/65C]. The syntax follows Table 6.27 in that reference. This descriptor is placed in the Program Map Table (PMT) as permitted in accordance with the standard descriptor mapping for the TS_program_map_section() found in [ISO 13818-1].

The only rating region currently defined for OpenCable use is Region One (value 0x01 for the rating_region field). Semantics for the coding of the fields found in the PSIP Content Advisory Descriptor follow the rules given in section 6.9.3 of [A/65C].

The OCTCD SHALL extract content advisory information formatted as defined in [CEA-608-D] when such information is transported according to [tru2way License] or [SCTE 20].

The OCTCD MAY extract content advisory information from the content_advisory_descriptor as defined in [A/65C] and [CEA-766-B] when such information is transported in the PMT of the in-band MPEG-2 transport stream or passed across the CableCARD Interface Extended Channel when receiving profile 3, 4, 5 or 6 of [SCTE 65].

The OCTCD SHALL provide decoding of content advisory information on uncompressed digital video outputs.

The OCTCD SHALL have *a priori* knowledge of the U.S. RRT (Region Rating Table for Region One) that is defined in [CEA-766-B] (i.e., the table is stored in the OCTCD).

The U.S. RRT SHALL be the default RRT. It is noted that this approach is consistent with that specified in Annex C.1 of [SCTE 65].

8.1.6 Digital Television (DTV) Emergency Alert Service (EAS)

The OCTCD processes emergency messages that utilize the EAS message syntax, which is compatible with MPEG-2 transport and is defined in [SCTE 18]. For in-band transmission, it appears in the transport packet with the same PID as those used for Service/System Information (SI). The table ID for the EAS message is 0xD8 as defined in [SCTE 18]. For out-of-band (OOB) transmission, the EAS message is transmitted according to [SCTE 18].

The OCTCD SHALL process EAS messages, when received, as defined in [SCTE 18].

8.2 HD Physical Interface

8.2.1 Uncompressed Digital Video Interface

The OCTCD SHALL provide support for an uncompressed digital video interface (output) using the High-Definition Multimedia Interface [HDMI].

The OCTCD SHALL use a female HDMI connector, which at a minimum supports the Single Link Transmission Minimized Differential Signaling as defined in [HDMI].

The OCTCD SHALL be compliant with mandatory elements of [CEA-861-E] for source devices.

The OCTCD SHALL employ the HDCP encryption system on the HDMI interface as defined in [HDCP].

The OCTCD SHALL enable HDCP encryption at all times when video is transmitted over the HDMI interface.

If HDCP authentication fails, then the OCTCD SHALL NOT transmit video over the HDMI interface, excluding any alerts generated by the device informing the user of the condition.

Note: Continued transmission of a blank video field over the HDMI interface for the purpose of muting video in this case is acceptable.

8.3 Signal Formats

This subsection lists the requirements on an OCTCD with respect to the scanning formats and colorimetry of the HD interfaces.

8.3.1 Scanning Formats for the HDMI Interface

The scanning systems supported on the HDMI output of the OCTCD SHALL include all of those identified as mandatory for a source device in [CEA-861-E], except for the 640x480p format, which is optional.

The OCTCD SHALL include support for the video identification code (VIC) 32 (1920x1080p/24.0Hz), as defined in Table 2 of [CEA-861-E].

The OCTCD SHALL include support for the video identification code (VIC) 34, (1920x1080p/29.970 and 30Hz) as defined in Table 2 of [CEA-861-E].

Note: Other formats listed in [CEA-861-E] as optional may also be provided.

The OCTCD SHALL convert each of the MPEG formats described in Table 3 of [SCTE 43] to the user selected or preferred format and aspect ratio of the display device connected to the HDMI output as discovered via the Enhanced Extended Display Identification Data (E-EDID) Detailed Timing Descriptions or the CEA Timing Extensions structure communicated from the display to the host device, as constrained by [CEA-861-E].

In the event that the E-EDID data structure or CEA EDID timing extension does not contain a supported timing format or cannot be read, then the HDMI output SHALL use 640x480p mode, if available.

If the OCTCD does not support 640x480p mode, then 720x480p mode MAY be utilized, if available.

If the OCTCD does not support either mode, then the HDMI output SHALL be disabled.

The OCTCD SHALL include a “reverse-telecine” format conversion and/or deinterlace processor to permit output according to VIC32 timing requirements identified above, when the compressed video input signal is any interlaced format with film-mode tags (`top_field_first` and `repeat_first_field`) used to indicate the 3:2 pull-down process has been detected.

The OCTCD SHALL Enable VIC32 timing when any of the following is true:

- The OCTCD has read the CEA Extension provided in the sink’s EDID data structure that identifies VIC32 timing as the preferred format by placement of VIC32 in the first position of the short video descriptor according to [CEA-861-E].
- The OCTCD has read the CEA Extension provided in the sink’s EDID data structure that identifies VIC32 timing as a supported format by placement of VIC32 in any position of the short video descriptor according to [CEA-861-E], and the source video material was encoded in the 1920x1080p/24Hz (or 23.967Hz) mode.

- The OCTCD has read the CEA Extension provided in the sink's EDID data structure that identifies VIC32 timing as a supported format in any position of the short video descriptor according to [CEA-861-E], and the user has manually selected this output mode.
- The OCTCD has read the CEA Extension provided in the sink's EDID data structure and was not able to identify VIC32 timing as a supported format in any position of the short video descriptor according to [CEA-861-E], and the user has manually selected this output mode, and the Host has established that the sink device can support this mode through a self-test process.

The OCTCD SHALL Enable VIC34 timing when any of the following is true:

- The OCTCD has read the CEA Extension provided in the sink's EDID data structure that identifies VIC34 timing as the preferred format by placement of VIC34 in the first position of the short video descriptor according to [CEA-861-E].
- The OCTCD has read the CEA Extension provided in the sink's EDID data structure that identifies VIC34 timing as a supported format by placement of VIC34 in any position of the short video descriptor according to [CEA-861-E], and the source video material was encoded in the 1920x1080p/30Hz (or 29.97Hz) mode.
- The OCTCD has read the CEA Extension provided in the sink's EDID data structure that identifies VIC34 timing as a supported format by placement of VIC34 in any position of the short video descriptor according to [CEA-861-E], and the user has manually selected this output mode.
- The OCTCD has read the CEA Extension provided in the sink's EDID data structure and was not able to identify VIC34 timing as a supported format by placement of VIC34 in any position of the short video descriptor according to [CEA-861-E], and the user has manually selected this output mode, and the Host has established that the sink device can support this mode through a self-test process.

8.3.2 Video Transmission Format for the HDMI Interface

The OCTCD SHALL employ the RGB component format according to [HDMI].

The OCTCD SHALL also support the YCbCr format according to [HDMI].

8.3.3 Colorimetry for the HDMI Interface

The HDMI interface on the OCTCD SHALL employ the colorimetry requirements according to section 5 of [CEA-861-E].

The OCTCD SHALL observe the MPEG sequence display extension (when present in the transport stream), to determine when color matrix conversion is necessary.

8.4 Stereoscopic 3D Support

This subsection lists the requirements on an OCTCD with respect to the stereoscopic 3D formats and HDMI interfaces.

8.4.1 3D Coding (format) Support

The OCTCD SHALL detect the presence of all stereoscopic 3D (S3D) formats defined by and signaled according to [CEP].

The OCTCD SHALL process these S3D formats, whether received by MPEG-2 or AVC/H.264 transmission, according to the requirements set forth in Section 8.4.

Note: It is expected that all S3D video transmissions will meet the content encoding requirements of [CEP].

8.4.2 InBand Metadata Processing Requirements

The OCTCD SHALL recognize the presence and format of AVC/H.264 S3D video streams signaled in the AVC/H.264 frame_packing_arrangement SEI message as constrained by [CEP].

The OCTCD SHALL map this format information into an HDMI Vendor-Specific InfoFrame (VSI) [HDMI] according to Table 8.4-1.

The OCTCD SHALL respond to changes in this data at random-access points [SCTE 128]. The response to these changes is not necessarily seamless.

The OCTCD SHALL recognize the presence and format of MPEG-2 S3D video streams signaled by the 3d_frame_packing_data() structure carried in the Picture Level user_data as defined in [CEP].

The OCTCD SHALL map this format information into an HDMI Vendor-Specific InfoFrame (VSI) [HDMI] according to Table 8.4-1.

The OCTCD SHALL respond to changes in this data at GOP boundaries. The response to these changes is not necessarily seamless [ISO 13818-2].

8.4.3 STB 3DTV Interface Requirements

The OCTCD SHALL determine supported S3D display formats as reported by the connected sink device in the HDMI E-EDID Vendor-Specific Data Block (VSDB).

The OCTCD SHALL limit the output of all content detected as S3D exclusively to the HDMI interface.

The OCTCD SHALL NOT permit the transmission of content detected as and formatted in any S3D format to any analog output.

Note: This requirement is not meant as any restriction on the use of anaglyph 3D or 3D to 2D conversion or on-screen notifications for use on analog outputs.

When connected to a display device via HDMI that does not report any of the S3D formats defined in [CEP] and the OCTCD is tuned to a source of S3D content, it SHALL:

Generate an on-screen warning message if the value of the ocStbHostDVIHDMI3DIncompatibilityMsgDisplay MIB object is set to true(1), indicating that an incompatibility may exist between the source format and the display device capabilities. If generated, this message will be displayed for no less than 30 seconds.

Transmit the S3D content if the value of the ocStbHostDVIHDMI3DIncompatibilityControl MIB object is set to passthru3D(1). If a user message is generated, it will be displayed in the same panelization arrangement as the detected S3D content.

Block the transmission of S3D content if the value of the ocStbHostDVIHDMI3DIncompatibilityControl MIB object is set to block3D(2). If a user message is generated, it will be displayed in 2D.

Note: Certain DTVs may support S3D formats but are not capable of reporting 3D support in the E-EDID.

Note: These requirements only apply to HW-generated user messages.

When the OCTCD is connected to a display device other than via HDMI, is tuned to a source of S3D content and the value of the `ocStbHostDVIHDMI3DIncompatibilityMsgDisplay` MIB object is set to `true(1)`, it SHALL display an on-screen warning message for no less than 30 seconds indicating that S3D requires a connection to HDMI.

This message SHALL be displayed in 2D.

The OCTCD SHALL use the [HDMI] Vendor Specific InfoFrame (VSI) to indicate S3D format types for all versions of HDMI implementations that carry frame-compatible S3D formats according to Table 8.4-1.

The OCTCD SHALL support the 3D signaling requirements in sections 8.2.3, H.1, and H.2 of [HDMI] for source devices according to Table 8.4-1.

An OCTCD that does not support the 3D frame packing ability of [HDMI] or is operating with HDMI Sink devices that do not support 3D frame packing ability, SHALL NOT perform format conversion, frame-rate conversion, stretching or zooming on any decoded S3D video, even if so directed by SAR values of 1:2 or 2:1, i.e., the device operates in pass-through mode.

Note: This does not preclude other post-decode operations such as scaling of the video to fit in a quarter-screen EPG window.

An OCTCD that supports the 3D frame packing ability of [HDMI] MAY "upscale" the 3D frame-compatible formats (half resolution) to the 3D frame-packing (full resolution) formats, when operating with HDMI sink devices that support these formats.

When an OCTCD is using the 3D frame packing ability of [HDMI], it SHALL observe the SAR values contained in the `SEI frame_packing_arrangement` SEI message for AVC streams or the `3d_frame_packing_data()` structure carried in the `Picture Level user_data`. for MPEG2 streams [CEP].

8.4.4 Closed Caption Requirements

Closed Caption decoding for S3D video formats by the STB shall operate as with 2D programming with the following changes:

The OCTCD SHALL render closed captions as duplicated images on each "half-frame" to match the decoded frame-compatible S3D format including the `frame_grid_alignment` data provided in the SEI message or `3D_frame_packing_data()`.

The OCTCD MAY render closed captions with depth offset (disparity) to enable placement in the z-space in front of the S3D program material as determined by the operator or the subscriber.

If the OCTCD uses any provided depth offset (disparity) metadata to render closed captions, it SHALL establish the z-space placement without exceeding frame boundaries.

8.4.5 Graphics and OSD Requirements

The OCTCD SHALL render graphics and on-screen displays (OSD) as duplicated images on each "half-frame" to match the decoded frame-compatible S3D format including the `frame_grid_alignment` data provided in the SEI message or `3D_frame_packing_data()`.

When rendering on-screen displays (OSD) over 3D content, the OCTCD MAY process the 3D source video in such a way that duplicated left or duplicated right images may be used on each "half-frame" so that the resulting image will appear as 2D, but will remain panelized (i.e., both panels are exactly the same).

Graphics and OSD generated by the OCTCD are not required to have 3-dimensional volume (i.e., they may be rendered as duplicate monoscopic images) but SHOULD be rendered with a depth offset between the L/R frames to place them properly in z-space.

The OCTCD MAY generate graphics and OSD that include depth offset (disparity) to enable placement in z-space in front of the S3D program material as determined by the operator or the subscriber.

While transmitting S3D content, the OCTCD SHALL NOT generate graphics and OSD that use 3D/2D switching (HDMI VSI) that force the 3D display to 2D mode when stereoscopic rendering is not possible.

8.4.6 EAS Requirements

EAS (force-tune) requirements for S3D programs will be treated as ordinary channel changes except that user action is not required.

When an EAS force-tune from a S3D program to a 2D program is indicated, the OCTCD SHALL signal the TV via HDMI VSI to deactivate 3D viewing mode.

When an EAS triggers an OSD from a S3D program, the OCTCD SHOULD use the 2D rendering mode described in Section 8.4.5.

Table 8.4-1 - Mapping of SEI format information to HDMI Vendor Specific Infoframes

SEI Format Values	HDMI VSI Values
<p>SbS (1920x1080i60)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • frame_packing_arrangement_type = 0000011 (3 decimal) • quincunx_sampling_flag = 0 • frame0_grid_position_x: 0100 (4 decimal) • frame0_grid_position_y: 1000 (8 decimal) • frame1_grid_position_x: 0100 (4 decimal) • frame1_grid_position_y: 1000 (8 decimal) • frame_packing_arrangement_id: 0 • content_interpretation_type: 000001 (frame 0: L, frame 1: R) • spatial_flipped_flag: 0 • frame0_flipped_flag: 0 • field_views_flag: 0 • current_frame_is_frame0_flag: 0 • frame0_self_contained_flag: 0 • frame1_self_contained_flag: 0 • frame_packing_arrangement_reserved_byte: 00000000 • frame_packing_arrangement_repetition_period: 1 • frame_packing_arrangement_extension_flag: 0 	<p>24 bit IEEE Registration Identifier = 0x000C03</p> <p>HDMI_Video_Format [3bits] = 010</p> <p>HDMI_VIC [1byte] = (not present)</p> <p>3D_Structure [4bits] = 1000</p> <p>3D_Ext_Data [4bits] = 0000</p> <p>3D_Meta_present [1bit] = 0</p>
<p>TaB (1920x1080p24)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • frame_packing_arrangement_type = 0000100 (4 decimal) • quincunx_sampling_flag = 0 • frame0_grid_position_x: 1000 (8 decimal) • frame0_grid_position_y: 0100 (4 decimal) • frame1_grid_position_x: 1000 (8 decimal) • frame1_grid_position_y: 0100 (4 decimal) • frame_packing_arrangement_id: 0 • content_interpretation_type: 000001 (frame 0: L, frame 1: R) • spatial_flipped_flag: 0 • frame0_flipped_flag: 0 • field_views_flag: 0 • current_frame_is_frame0_flag: 0 • frame0_self_contained_flag: 0 • frame1_self_contained_flag: 0 • frame_packing_arrangement_reserved_byte: 00000000 • frame_packing_arrangement_repetition_period: 1 • frame_packing_arrangement_extension_flag: 0 	<p>24 bit IEEE Registration Identifier = 0x000C03</p> <p>HDMI_Video_Format [3bits] = 010</p> <p>HDMI_VIC [1byte] = (not present)</p> <p>3D_Structure [4bits] = 0110</p> <p>3D_Ext_Data [4bits] = (not present)</p> <p>3D_Meta_present [1bit] = 0</p>

SEI Format Values	HDMI VSI Values
<p>TaB (1280x720p60)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • frame_packing_arrangement_type = 0000100 (4 decimal) • quincunx_sampling_flag = 0 • frame0_grid_position_x: 1000 (8 decimal) • frame0_grid_position_y: 0100 (4 decimal) • frame1_grid_position_x: 1000 (8 decimal) • frame1_grid_position_y: 0100 (4 decimal) • frame_packing_arrangement_id: 0 • content_interpretation_type: 000001 (frame 0: L, frame 1: R) • spatial_flipped_flag: 0 • frame0_flipped_flag: 0 • field_views_flag: 0 • current_frame_is_frame0_flag: 0 • frame0_self_contained_flag: 0 • frame1_self_contained_flag: 0 • frame_packing_arrangement_reserved_byte: 00000000 • frame_packing_arrangement_repetition_period: 1 • frame_packing_arrangement_extension_flag: 0 	<p>24 bit IEEE Registration Identifier = 0x000C03</p> <p>HDMI_Video_Format [3bits] = 010</p> <p>HDMI_VIC [1byte] = (not present)</p> <p>3D_Structure [4bits] = 0110</p> <p>3D_Ext_Data [4bits] = (not present)</p> <p>3D_Meta_present [1bit] = 0</p>

9 AUDIO

The OCTCD SHALL be capable of decoding Dolby AC-3 and E-AC-3 audio in accordance with [A/52B] as constrained per [A/53], with additional data rates up to 448 kbps.

The OCTCD SHALL be capable of decoding MPEG-1 audio [ISO 11172-3] and MPEG-4 audio [ISO 14496-3].

The OCTCD SHALL be capable of decoding MPEG-1 audio and MPEG-4 audio with Sampling Rates of 32 kHz, 44.1 kHz and 48 kHz per decoding constraints specified in Section 6.1.4 of [ETSI TS 101 154 v1.8.1].

The OCTCD SHALL be capable of decoding Dolby AC-3 and E-AC-3 audio with Sampling Rates specified in [A/52B] as constrained per [A/53].

The OCTCD SHALL be capable of decoding MPEG-1 layer I & II audio per decoding constraints specified in sections 6.1.1 - 6.1.6 of [ETSI TS 101 154 v1.8.1].

The OCTCD SHALL be capable of decoding MPEG-1 layer III audio as specified in [ISO 11172-3].

The OCTCD SHALL be capable of decoding MPEG-4 audio per decoding constraints specified in Section 6.4 of [ETSI TS 101 154 v1.8.1].

The OCTCD SHALL use the ISO 639 language descriptor, if present in the PMT, as defined in [ISO 13818-1] and constrained by [SCTE 54], to identify the language associated with audio elementary streams.

The OCTCD SHALL be certified by Dolby Laboratories Inc. for Dolby Digital™ (AC-3) AND Dolby Digital Plus (E AC-3) decoding.

9.1 Music Channel Services

Some music channel services provide both an audio elementary stream and a low frame-rate video elementary stream, typically at the rate of one frame every six seconds with a data rate of 50 kbps. These low frame-rate video elementary streams have the **low_delay** flag set to "1" in the sequence_extension(), following the sequence_header() of the video_sequence(). The following is from the MPEG-2 Video standard [ISO 13818-2] concerning the use of the **low_delay** flag.

"low_delay - This flag, when set to "1", indicates that the sequence does not contain any B-pictures, that the frame reordering delay is not present in the VBV description and that the bitstream may contain 'big pictures'.

'Big pictures' are images that may reside in the VBV buffer for longer than two fields. The VBV buffer will be examined periodically before removing the coded picture to prevent buffer underflow. See section C.7 of [ISO 13818-2] for details.

The OCTCD MPEG-2 decoder SHALL be capable of decoding video elementary streams when the low_delay flag in the video sequence extension is enabled.

The OCTCD AVC decoder SHALL be capable of decoding video elementary streams with the low_delay flag enabled as referred in [SCTE 128].

10 OPENCABLE HOST DEVICE POWERING STATES

Once AC power is applied to the OCTCD and the Card is installed and initialized, the OCTCD always has access to network services through the Out-Of-Band channel for network monitoring purposes or for receipt of messages, alarms, or notifications. When the OCTCD is "On" (in a video viewing state), it is fully active and providing services that are displayed on the subscriber's television. When it is in "standby"(powered on but in a non-viewing state), it still maintains network connectivity and is still consuming power and running the processor, operating system, and navigator shell.

When the OCTCD is disconnected from AC power or from the cable connection, it is not connected to the network. When reconnected, the OCTCD does not have to re-initialize, but will re-establish network connectivity. The AC power up sequence is slightly longer than the "standby" to "On" sequence.

The operation of the OCTCD in standby mode is not defined in this document. See [OCAP].

10.1 CableCARD Standby Mode Power Management

The minimum power requirements for OCTCD background (Sleep) mode SHALL include the following:

The OCTCD OOB receiver (including the DOCSIS 2.0 DSG embedded cable modem) circuitry SHALL be fully powered when a Card is inserted.

The OCTCD OOB transmitter (including the DOCSIS 2.0 DSG embedded cable modem) circuitry SHALL be fully powered when a Card is inserted.

The Card SHALL be fully powered when inserted.

If the OCTCD implements a DOCSIS 3.0 eCM, the following requirements apply:

When entering standby mode, the eSTB SHOULD send an indication to the eCM that it is going into standby mode.

When exiting standby mode, the eSTB SHOULD send an indication to the eCM that it is coming out of standby mode.

NOTE: The eCM can use this indication to enter or exit 1x1 mode.

11 OPENCABLE HOST DEVICE DIAGNOSTICS

The OCTCD SHALL be capable of performing self-diagnostics and displaying the following conditions via the LED readout:

Power status

Boot status

Indication of fatal error (e.g., Checksum error)

The OCTCD SHALL be capable of performing self-diagnostics and displaying the following information via the on-screen display (OSD):

Power status

Boot status

Memory Allocation

Application Information

Firmware Version

MAC Addresses

Status of FDC

Status of FAT

Status of RDC

Current Channel Status

HDMI Port Status

Status of DOCSIS transport channels

Home Network Status

Signaling Status

Card Status

SEB Status

The Host SHALL display diagnostics when triggered by the "Exit" key, followed by the "Down" key, followed by a second depression of the "Down" key, followed by the "2" key - that is, "Exit"- "Down"- "Down"- "2".

The "Exit" key SHALL be depressed for >2 seconds.

The interval between key depressions (e.g., "Down" - "2") SHALL NOT exceed two seconds.

The Host SHALL respond to the "Power On/Off" key while displaying diagnostics.

The Host SHALL leave the diagnostics display if there has been no interaction with the display for five minutes.

11.1 Diagnostic Parameters

The following subsections describe the self-diagnostic parameters that are displayed via the OSD and reported to the Card.

11.1.1 Power Status

The OCTCD SHALL be capable of displaying and reporting power status information.

The displayed status SHALL be equivalent to the value in the Host MIB object, `ocStbHostPowerStatus`, displayed as one of: On/Active, Standby.

11.1.2 Boot Status

The OCTCD SHALL be capable of displaying and reporting boot status information.

The displayed status SHALL be equivalent to the value in the Host MIB object, `ocStbHostBootStatus`, displayed as one of: Boot completed successfully; Boot completed with errors; Boot in progress with code download; Boot in progress, no code download; Boot waiting for initial monitor application; Boot process in unknown state.

11.1.3 Memory Allocation

The OCTCD SHALL be capable of displaying and reporting the following memory allocation information for each memory type:

Type of memory being reported (as applicable: ROM, DRAM, SRAM, Flash, HDD, DVD, and NVM)

Physical size of memory type (in kilobytes, defined to 1024 bytes)

The values displayed for each memory type SHALL equal the values in the Host MIB object, `ocStbHostSystemMemoryReportTable`.

11.1.4 Application Information

The OCTCD SHALL be capable of displaying and reporting the following application information for each available applications:

The displayed application name SHALL equal the value in the Host MIB object, `ocStbHostSoftwareAppNameString`.

The displayed version number SHALL equal the value in the Host MIB object, `ocStbHostSoftwareAppVersionNumber`.

The displayed application status SHALL equal the value in the Host MIB object, `ocStbHostSoftwareStatus`, displayed as one of: Running, Paused, Loaded, Not Loaded, Destroyed.

The displayed OrgID SHALL equal the value in the Host MIB object, `ocStbHostSoftwareOrganizationId`.

The displayed AppID SHALL equal the value in the Host MIB object, `ocStbHostSoftwareApplicationId`.

11.1.5 Firmware Version

The OCTCD SHALL be capable of displaying and reporting the following firmware version information:

Firmware version number of entire firmware image

Firmware release or installation date of entire firmware image

The displayed firmware version SHALL equal the value in the Host MIB object, ocStbHostSoftwareFirmwareVersion.

The displayed firmware release date SHALL equal the value in the Host MIB object, ocStbHostSoftwareFirmwareReleaseDate.

11.1.5.1 Firmware Download Status

The OCTCD SHALL be capable of displaying the following firmware download status:

The displayed firmware download status SHALL be equivalent to the value in the Host MIB object, ocStbHostFirmwareCodeDownloadStatus, displayed as one of: Started, Complete, Failed.

If the download failed, then the "FAILED" status SHALL be followed by one of the applicable Error Codes defined in Table 11.1-1 and equal to the Host MIB object ocStbHostFirmwareDownloadFailedStatus. It is displayed as "CdlError xx".

Note: Display of Error Code may include additional textual description.

Table 11.1-1 - Download Fail Status Error Codes

Error Code	Definition
CDL-ERROR-1	No Failure.
CDL-ERROR-2	Improper code file controls - CVC subject organizationName for manufacturer does not match the Host device manufacturer name.
CDL-ERROR-3	Improper code file controls - CVC subject organizationName for code cosigning agent does not match the Host device current code cosigning agent.
CDL-ERROR-4	Improper code file controls - The manufacturer's PKCS #7 signingTime value is less-than the codeAccessStart value currently held in the Host device.
CDL-ERROR-5	Improper code file controls - The manufacturer's PKCS #7 signingTime is greater than the CVC validity end time.
CDL-ERROR-6	Improper code file controls - The manufacturer's CVC validity start time is less-than the cvcAccessStart value currently held in the Host device.
CDL-ERROR-7	Improper code file controls - The manufacturer's PKCS #7 signingTime value is less-than the CVC validity start time.
CDL-ERROR-8	Improper code file controls - Missing or improper extendedKeyUsage extension in the manufacturer CVC.
CDL-ERROR-9	Improper code file controls - The cosigner's PKCS #7 signingTime value is less-than the codeAccessStart value currently held in the Host device.
CDL-ERROR-10	Improper code file controls - The cosigner's PKCS #7 signingTime is greater than CVC validity end time.

Error Code	Definition
CDL-ERROR-11	Improper code file controls - The cosigner's CVC validity start time is less-than the cvcAccessStart value currently held in the Host device.
CDL-ERROR-12	Improper code file controls - The cosigner's PKCS #7 signingTime value is less-than the CVC validity start time.
CDL-ERROR-13	Improper code file controls - Missing or improper extended key-usage extension in the cosigner's CVC.
CDL-ERROR-14	Code file manufacturer CVC validation failure.
CDL-ERROR-15	Code file manufacturer CVS validation failure.
CDL-ERROR-16	Code file cosigner CVC validation failure.
CDL-ERROR-17	Code file cosigner CVS validation failure.
CDL-ERROR-18	Improper eCM configuration file CVC format (e.g., missing or improper key usage attribute).
CDL-ERROR-19	eCM configuration file CVC validation failure.
CDL-ERROR-20	Improper SNMP CVC format.
CDL-ERROR-21	CVC subject organizationName for manufacturer does not match the Host devices manufacturer name.
CDL-ERROR-22	Reserved for future definition.
CDL-ERROR-23	The CVC validity start time is less-than or equal-to the corresponding subject's cvcAccessStart value currently held in the Host device.
CDL-ERROR-24	Missing or improper key usage attribute for CVCs other than the eCM configuration file CVC.
CDL-ERROR-25	SNMP CVC validation failure.

11.1.6 MAC and Network Addresses

The OCTCD SHALL be capable of displaying and reporting the following media access control (MAC) address information for each interface:

The MAC address of the eSTB, Card and eCM. The address may be in MAC or EUI-64 address form.

The displayed Card MAC address SHALL equal the value in the Host MIB object, ocStbHostCardMacAddress.

The displayed eSTB MAC address SHALL equal the value in the eSTB IF-MIB object, ifPhysAddress of the ifTable (ifIndex 1).

The displayed eCM MAC address SHALL equal the value obtained from the cable modem. (eCM1 in Figure 11.2-15.)

MAC addresses SHALL be displayed as dot-separated hexadecimal octets (xx.xx.xx.xx.xx.xx).

The OCTCD SHALL be capable of displaying and reporting the following network address information for each component:

Network address of the eSTB, eCM, and the Card (if assigned).

The displayed Card IP address SHALL equal the value in the Host MIB object ocStbHostCardIpAddress.

The displayed eSTB IP address SHALL equal the value in the OCTCD IP-MIB object ipNetToPhysicalNetAddress associated with ifIndex = 1. (eSTB in Figure 11.2-15.)

The displayed eCM IP address SHALL equal the IP address assigned to the eCM, if it is populated in the ipAddrTable or ipAddressTable [RFC 4293]. (eCM2 in Figure 11.2-15.)

IP addresses SHALL be displayed using IPv4 dot notation address or IPv6 colon notation.

11.1.7 Status of FDC

The OCTCD SHALL be capable of displaying and reporting the following OOB forward data channel (FDC) information:

The displayed FDC frequency value SHALL equal the value in the Host MIB object ocStbHostQpskFDCFreq when adjusted for differences in measurement units. The value of the frequency SHALL be displayed in red if the less than 70 MHz or greater than 130 MHz.

The displayed FDC carrier lock value SHALL equal the value in the Host MIB object, ocStbHostQpskFDCStatus.

The displayed FDC power value SHALL equal the value in the Host MIB object, ocStbHostQpskFDCPower, when adjusted for differences in measurement units.

The displayed FDC SNR value SHALL equal the value in the Host MIB object, ocStbHostQpskFDCSNR, when adjusted for differences in measurement units.

The text of the power value in the FDC status SHALL be yellow when the value is between -12dBmV and -15dBmV or between +12 dBmV and +15 dBmV.

The text of the power value in the FDC status SHALL be red when the value is lower than -15 dBmV or greater than +15 dBmV.

11.1.8 Status of FAT

The OCTCD SHALL be capable of displaying and reporting the following forward application transport (FAT) channel information for each tuner used for FAT channel tuning:

Each inband tuner SHALL have its status information displayed in a separate column identified with a unique number, e.g., TUNER-1.

The displayed tuner frequency value SHALL equal the value in the Host MIB object ocStbHostInBandTunerFrequency when adjusted for differences in measurement units.

The displayed modulation mode value SHALL equal the value in the Host MIB object ocStbHostInBandTunerModulationMode.

The displayed value for received power level SHALL equal the value in the Host MIB object ocStbHostInBandTunerPower, when adjusted for differences in measurement units.

The displayed power level SHALL be accurate to within 6 dBmV of the actual received level, in tenths of dBmV (average level), across the RF Input Level Range defined in Table 5.3-1.

The text of the power value in the FAT display SHALL be yellow when the value is between -12dBmV and -15dBmV or between +12dBmV and +15dBmV.

The text of the power value in the FAT display SHALL be red when the value is lower than -15dBmV or greater than +15dBmV.

The displayed tuner SNR value SHALL equal the value in the Host MIB object `ocStbHostInBandTunerSNRValue` when adjusted for differences in measurement units.

The displayed SNR value SHALL be accurate to within 3 dB of the actual received level, in tenths of dB, if the currently tuned channel is a digital QAM channel, across an SNR range of 22 dB to 32 dB for 64 QAM and 28 dB to 38 dB for 256 QAM.

If the modulation mode is 64 QAM, the text of the SNR value SHALL be red when the value is lower than 25dB.

If the modulation mode is 256 QAM, the text of the SNR value SHALL be red when the RF power is between -10dBmV and -15dBmV AND SNR is less than 36dB.

If the modulation mode is 256 QAM, the text of the SNR value SHALL be red when the RF power is between -10dBmV and +15dBmV AND SNR is less than 33dB.

The displayed value for carrier lock SHALL report "locked" if the value in the Host MIB object `ocStbHostInBandTunerState` is "foundQam" or "foundSync"; otherwise report "unlocked" for any other value.

The displayed PCR lock value, if tuned to a digital QAM channel, SHALL equal the value in the Host MIB object `ocStbHostMpeg2ContentPCRLockStatus`.

The displayed value for successful tune count SHALL equal the value in the Host MIB object `ocStbHostInBandTunerTotalTuneCount` less the value in `ocStbHostInBandTunerTuneFailureCount`. Referred to in Figure 11.2-7 as `STuneCount`.

The displayed value for failed tune count SHALL equal the value in the Host MIB object, `ocStbHostInBandTunerTuneFailureCount`.

Any non-zero tune failure count SHALL be displayed in red text.

The displayed value for last failed frequency SHALL equal the value in the Host MIB object `ocStbHostInBandTunerTuneFailFreq` when adjusted for differences in measurement units.

The last failed frequency value SHALL be set to zero if a tune failure has not been detected since the last boot cycle.

The displayed value for correctable errors SHALL equal the value in the Host MIB object `ocStbHostInBandTunerCorrecteds`.

The displayed value for uncorrectable errors SHALL equal the value in the Host MIB object `ocStbHostInBandTunerUncorrectables`.

11.1.9 Status of RDC

If the OOB return data channel (RDC) is established, the OCTCD SHALL be capable of displaying and reporting the following reverse data channel (RDC) information:

The displayed RDC frequency value SHALL equal the value in the Host MIB object `ocStbHostQpskRDCFreq` when adjusted for differences in measurement units.

The displayed RDC power level value SHALL equal the value in the Host MIB object ocStbHostQpskRDCPower when adjusted for differences in measurement units.

The displayed RDC Data Rate SHALL equal the value in the Host MIB object ocStbHostQpskRDCDataRate.

11.1.10 Current Channel Status

The OCTCD SHALL be capable of displaying and reporting the following current channel information for each channel selected for any purpose, e.g., presentation, recording:

The displayed value for MPEG program number SHALL equal the value in the Host MIB object ocStbHostMpeg2ContentProgramNumber.

The displayed value for CCI SHALL equal the value in the Host MIB object ocStbHostMpeg2ContentCCIValue.

If the EMI bits indicate 11b for copy never, the text SHOULD appear in red.

11.1.11 HDMI Port Status

The OCTCD SHALL be capable of displaying and reporting the following status information for each HDMI port:

Each HDMI port SHALL have its status information displayed in a separate column identified by its port number, e.g., HDMI-1.

The displayed value for connection status for each interface SHALL equal the value in the Host MIB object, ocStbHostDVIHDMIConnectionStatus.

The displayed value for connected device type for each interface SHALL equal the value in the Host MIB object, ocStbHostDVIHDMIAttachedDeviceType.

The displayed value for HDCP status for each interface SHALL be equivalent to the value in the Host MIB object, ocStbHostDVIHDMIHostDeviceHDCPStatus. The displayed status should present the enumerated text of the MIB object value (e.g., 'compliantHDCPdevice(2)' should be displayed instead of the integer, '2').

The displayed value for Horizontal Resolution for each interface SHALL be derived from the value in the Host MIB object ocStbHostDVIHDMIOutputFormat.

The displayed value for Vertical Resolution for each interface SHALL be derived from the value in the Host MIB object ocStbHostDVIHDMIOutputFormat.

The displayed value for frame rate for each interface SHALL be equivalent to the value in the Host MIB object ocStbHostDVIHDMIFrameRate. The actual frame rate should be displayed rather than the enumeration value reported in the MIB.

The displayed value for aspect ratio for each interface SHALL be equivalent to the value in the Host MIB object ocStbHostDVIHDMIAspectRatio.

The displayed value for Scanning Format for each interface SHALL be derived from the value in the Host MIB object ocStbHostDVIHDMIOutputFormat and reported as either "interlaced" or "progressive".

11.1.12 Status of DOCSIS transport channels

The OCTCD SHALL be capable of displaying and reporting the following DOCSIS transport channels status information:

The displayed value for DOCSIS downstream center frequency SHALL equal the value in the Host eCM MIB object docsIfDownChannelFrequency.

The displayed value for DOCSIS downstream received power level SHALL equal the value in the Host eCM MIB object docsIfDownChannelPower when adjusted for different units of magnitude.

If the OCTCD contains a DOCSIS 2.0 eCM, the displayed value for DOCSIS downstream carrier lock status SHALL report locked if the Host eCM MIB object, docsIfCmStatusValue, reflects an initialization state dependent upon a locked downstream carrier as defined in [RFIV2.0]. Otherwise, unlocked should be reported.

If the OCTCD contains a DOCSIS 3.0 eCM, the displayed value for DOCSIS downstream carrier lock status SHALL report locked if the Host eCM MIB object, docsIf3CmStatusValue, reflects an initialization state dependent upon a locked downstream carrier as defined in [MULPIV3.0]. Otherwise, unlocked should be reported.

The displayed value for DOCSIS downstream SNR SHALL equal the value in the Host eCM MIB object, docsIfSigQSignalNoise.

The displayed value for DOCSIS upstream center frequency SHALL be equivalent to the value in the Host eCM MIB object docsIfUpChannelFrequency.

The displayed value for DOCSIS upstream power level SHALL equal the value in the Host eCM MIB object docsIfCmStatusTxPower when adjusted for differences in measurement units.

11.1.13 Signaling Status

The OCTCD SHALL be capable of displaying and reporting the status of signaling as follows:

The displayed value for unbound application signaling SHALL equal the value indicated in the Host MIB object ocStbHostSoftwareApplicationInfoSigLastReadStatus.

If the value for application signaling status is "error", it SHALL be displayed in red.

The displayed value for PAT and PMT timeouts SHALL equal the values indicated in the Host MIB objects ocStbHostPatTimeoutCount and ocStbHostPmtTimeoutCount, respectively.

These objects reflect the number of timeouts since the last reboot.

The displayed value for Inband and OOB object carousel timeouts SHALL equal the values indicated in the Host MIB objects ocStbHostInbandCarouselTimeoutCount and ocStbHostOobCarouselTimeoutCount, respectively.

These objects reflect the number of timeouts since the last reboot.

11.1.14 Status of Card

The OCTCD SHALL be capable of displaying and reporting the following Card status:

The displayed value for OOB mode SHALL equal the value in the Host MIB object ocStbHostOobMessageMode.

The displayed value for card certificate check SHALL equal the value in the Host MIB object ocStbHostCardCpCertificateCheck.

The displayed value for CP status SHALL equal the value in the Host MIB object ocStbHostCardCpAuthKeyStatus. An indication of not ready SHOULD be displayed in red text.

The displayed value for CCI challenge count SHALL equal the value in the Host MIB object ocStbHostCardCpCciChallengeCount.

Card CCI Challenge Message Count SHALL be the number of times the challenge message was sent (see [CCCP] table 11.7-2).

The displayed value for Copy Protection Key Generation Count SHALL equal the value in the Host MIB object ocStbHostCardCpKeyGenerationReqCount.

Card Copy Protection Key Generation Count SHALL be the decimal value of the number of times keys have been generated as defined in [CCCP].

The displayed value for Card ID SHALL equal the value in the Host MIB object ocStbHostCardId.

The displayed value for Host ID SHALL equal the value in the Host MIB object ocStbHostHostId.

The displayed value for Card Manufacturer ID SHALL equal the value in the Host MIB object ocStbHostCardMfgId.

The displayed value for CP System ID SHALL equal the value in the Host MIB object ocStbHostCardCpIdList.

The displayed value for CA Status SHALL be equivalent to the value in the Host MIB object ocStbHostCardBindingStatus. A status of "ready" should be reported if the MIB object value is bound(4) and "not ready" for all other MIB object values. An indication of not ready SHOULD be displayed in red text.

The displayed value for CA System ID SHALL equal the value in the Host MIB object ocStbHostCASystemIdentifier.

The displayed value for Generic Feature Resource SHALL equal the value in the Host MIB object ocStbHostCardOpenedGenericResource.

The displayed value for time zone offset SHALL equal the value in the Host MIB object ocStbHostCardTimeZoneOffset.

The displayed value for daylight savings time delta SHALL equal the value in the Host MIB object ocStbHostCardDaylightSavingsTimeDelta.

The displayed value for daylight savings entry time SHALL equal the value in the Host MIB object ocStbHostCardDaylightSavingsTimeEntry in human-readable YYYY-MM-DD,HH:MM format.

The displayed value for daylight savings exit time SHALL equal the value in the Host MIB object ocStbHostCardDaylightSavingsTimeExit in human-readable YYYY-MM-DD,HH:MM format.

The displayed value for EA location SHALL equal the value in the Host MIB object ocStbHostCardEaLocationCode.

The displayed value for VCT-ID SHALL equal the value in the Host MIB object ocStbHostCardVctId.

11.1.15 SEB Status

If the OCTCD supports SEB, the OCTCD SHALL display the DOCSIS Set-top Gateway Set-top Device MIB object, dsgIfStdDsgSebRole value.

When the OCTCD is unable to initialize SEB functionality, it SHALL display the applicable information as described below.

When the OCTCD is operating in DSG two-way mode but is unable to initialize the SEBS function it SHALL display each applicable reason listed below.

- DSG MIB Object, dsgIfStdDsgSebControlObject, is “FALSE”
- NACO = 0
- Insufficient CPE Count to support a SEBC
- ifAdminStatus = down
- All Home Network links down
- Unknown Cause

When the OCTCD is operating in DSG one-way mode but is unable to initialize the SEBC function, it SHALL display each applicable reason listed below.

- DSG MIB Object, dsgIfStdDsgSebControlObject, is “FALSE”
- ifAdminStatus = down
- All Home Network links down
- Unknown Cause

When the OCTCD is operating as an SEB Client but is unable to detect an SEB Server, it SHALL be capable of displaying the docsDevEventTable log entry with error code set to P21.24 and the associated "Event Message" Annex A.

When the OCTCD is operating as an SEB Client and is unable to establish a tunnel with any detected SEB Server, it SHALL be capable of displaying the docsDevEventTable log entry "Error Code Set" and "Event Message" Annex A corresponding to this condition.

When operating as an SEB Server, it SHALL be capable of displaying and reporting the following SEB status information.

Advertised Figure of Merit (FOM)

Maximum number of SEB Clients supported

Number of SEB Clients currently connected

Connected Device MAC addresses

Connected Device IP addresses

Connected Device Type (eSTB, eCM or Card) associated with the MAC Address / IP Address pair

When operating as an SEB Client and connected to an SEB Server, it SHALL be capable of displaying and reporting the following SEB status information.

Server MAC address

Server IP address

SEB Server FOM

Connected devices Type (eSTB, eCM or Card)

Connected devices MAC addresses

Connected devices IP addresses

11.2 Host Diagnostics UI Requirements

This section defines the layout and navigation of the hardware platform diagnostics.

11.2.1 User Interface Layout

This section defines the screen layout requirements for the platform diagnostics application.

For the purposes of validating implementations against these templates, the following attributes of the templates are to be considered:

- Unless otherwise specified, all specified labels and fields are required.
- The relative placement of fields to corresponding labels.
- The presence but not the exact amount of white-space.
- Fixed label text.
- Labels and values must be easily distinguishable, but exact font styling is unimportant unless otherwise specified.

In the templates, fixed labels are styled as bold and dynamic labels and fields are not. This distinction is not required by the implementation.

11.2.1.1 Main Menu Page Requirements

This section defines the screen layout requirements for the top level diagnostics screens.

The OCTCD diagnostic application SHALL implement the Main Menu Page template as depicted in Figure 11.2-1.

The Main Menu Page SHALL be divided into the Category Frame, Page Frame and Instruction Frame.

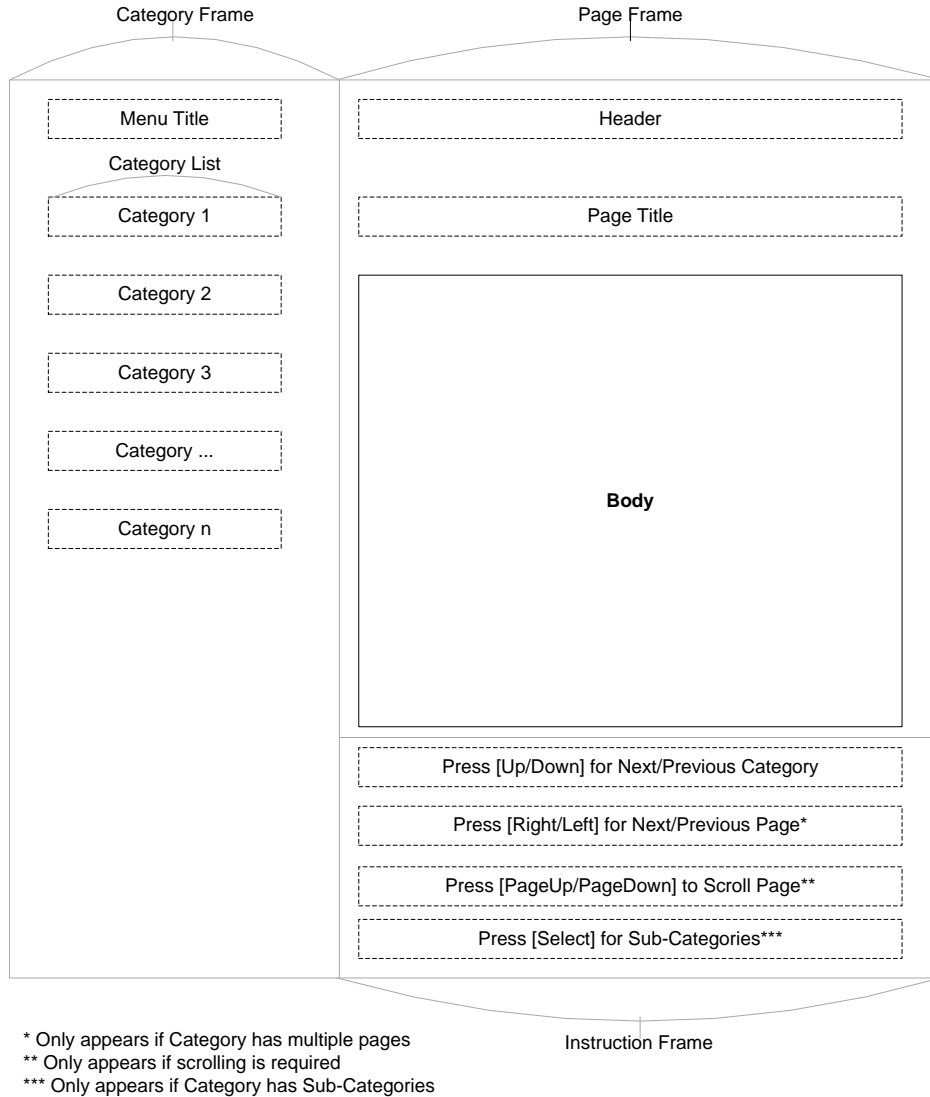


Figure 11.2-1 - Main Menu Page Template

The Category Frame in the OCTCD Main Menu Page SHALL list, by category, the available diagnostics or options that can be selected.

The Category Frame SHALL contain a "Menu Title" field presented in yellow text.

The Page Frame in the OCTCD Main Menu Page SHALL contain a "Header" field that displays the same text as the Category selected. The Page Frame Body is where the desired diagnostic information is displayed.

The "Header" field in the Page Frame SHALL be presented in green text.

The Page frame in the OCTCD Main Menu page SHALL contain a "Page Title" field, which is used to label the selected diagnostics page.

The "Page Title" field SHALL also include a label using the format "Page x of y" in the event that the Category has more than one page associated with it.

The "Page Title" field in the Page Frame SHALL be presented in light blue text.

The Instruction Frame in the OCTCD Main Menu Page SHALL contain an area where the diagnostic application explains key command options.

The Instruction frame SHALL contain the text: "Press [Up/Down]for Next/Previous Category".

If a Category uses more than one page, the Instruction Frame SHALL contain the text: "Press [Right/Left] for Next/Previous Page".

If the information for a Page does not fit on the screen, the Instruction Frame SHALL contain the text: "Press [PageUp/PageDown] to scroll".

See Figure 11.2-2 for an example of a Main Menu Page implementation.

11.2.1.2 Main Menu Page Navigation

The OCTCD diagnostic application SHALL implement the following behavior for RIGHT/LEFT Arrow Keys:

The RIGHT/LEFT Arrow Keys SHALL only be recognized if the current Category has multiple pages.

The OCTCD diagnostic application SHALL implement the following behavior when multiple pages exist in the current Category:

On Right arrow, the Next page for the selected Category SHALL be displayed.

On Left arrow, the Previous page for the selected Category SHALL be displayed.

Page order within a Category SHALL wrap. For pages 1...n, if a user presses Right arrow when they are on page n, they are taken to page 1. Alternately, if a user presses the Left arrow key when they are on page 1, they are taken to page n.

The OCTCD diagnostic application SHALL implement the following behavior for UP/DOWN Arrow Keys:

The UP/DOWN Arrow Keys SHALL be used to highlight the selection in the Category Frame through the list of categories.

On Down arrow, the Category below the current position in the list is highlighted and its first (or only) page information is displayed in the Page Frame Body.

On Up arrow, the Category above the current position in the list is highlighted and its first (or only) page information is displayed in the Page Frame Body.

The Category List SHALL wrap. For Categories 1...n, if a user presses Down arrow when they are on Category n, they are taken to Category 1. Alternately, if a user presses the UP arrow key when they are on Category 1, they are taken to Category n.

The OCTCD diagnostic application SHALL implement the following behavior for Page UP/DOWN Keys:

The Page UP/DOWN Keys SHALL only be recognized if not all information for the current Page fits on the screen.

The OCTCD diagnostic application SHALL implement the following behavior when not all information for a Page fits on the screen:

On Page DOWN, the displayed information for the current Page SHALL be scrolled up to enable display of subsequent information.

On Page UP, the displayed information for the current Page SHALL be scrolled down to enable display of preceding information.

The scrolling operation SHALL NOT wrap. If a user presses the Page UP key when the top of the current Page is displayed, nothing happens; if a user presses the Page DOWN key when the bottom of the current Page is displayed, nothing happens.

The OCTCD diagnostic application SHALL implement the following behavior for the EXIT Key:

The EXIT Key SHALL exit the Diagnostic Pages.

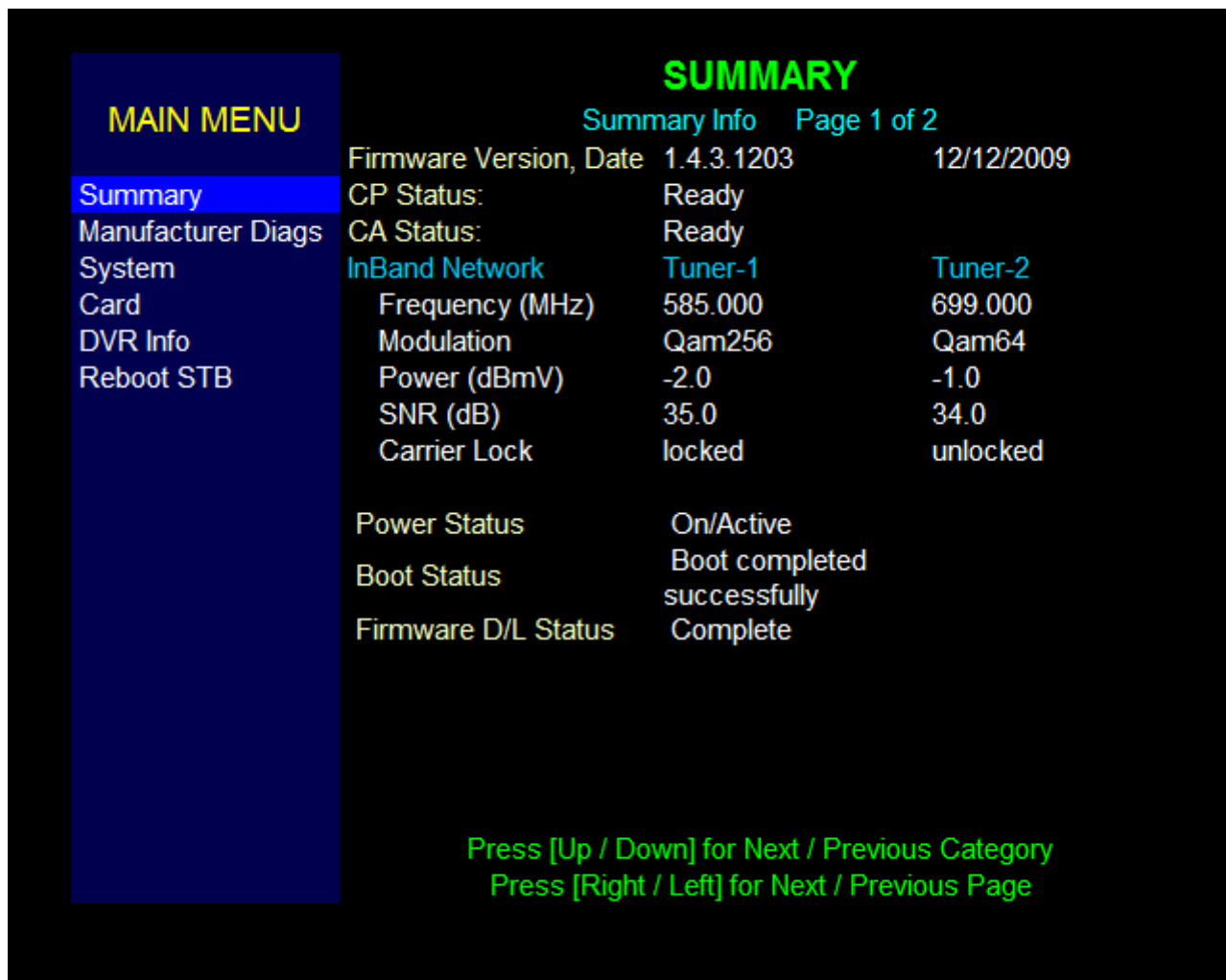


Figure 11.2-2 - Main Menu Page Example

11.2.1.3 Sub-Level Page Requirements

This section defines the screen layout requirements for the sub-level diagnostics screens. Sub-level screens exist where a category has other sub-categories of diagnostics. An example of this would be that Card diagnostics has several MMI screens underneath that category.

The OCTCD diagnostic application SHALL implement the sub-level page template as depicted in Figure 11.2-3.

The OCTCD diagnostic application SHALL implement the following behavior for Sub-Level Menus:

If a Sub-Category uses more than one page, the Instruction Frame in the OCTCD Sub-Level menu screen SHALL contain the text: "Press [Right/Left] for Next/Previous Page".

If a Sub-Category does not itself have further Sub-Categories, the Instruction Frame SHALL contain the text: "Press [Last] for Parent Category".

If a Sub-Category has one or more Sub-Categories, the Instruction Frame SHALL contain the text: "Press [Select] for Sub-Categories, [Last] for Parent Category".

The Instruction frame SHALL contain the text: "Press [Up/Down]for Next/Previous Sub-Category".

The OCTCD diagnostic application SHALL implement the following behavior for the SELECT Key:

The SELECT Key SHALL only be recognized if the current Category has sub-categories.

When the SELECT Key is recognized, the current Category name moves to the Menu Title field.

When the SELECT Key is recognized, the sub-categories list populates Category 1-n slots in the Category Frame.

When the SELECT Key is recognized, the Page Frame Body is updated with the first (or only) page information for the first sub-category in the list. See Figure 11.2-3.

The OCTCD diagnostic application SHALL implement the following behavior for the LAST Key:

The LAST Key SHALL only be recognized if the user is on a sub-category page.

The LAST key event SHALL navigate back up to the previous Category page.

An example implementation of the sub-level diagnostics page is shown in Figure 11.2-4.

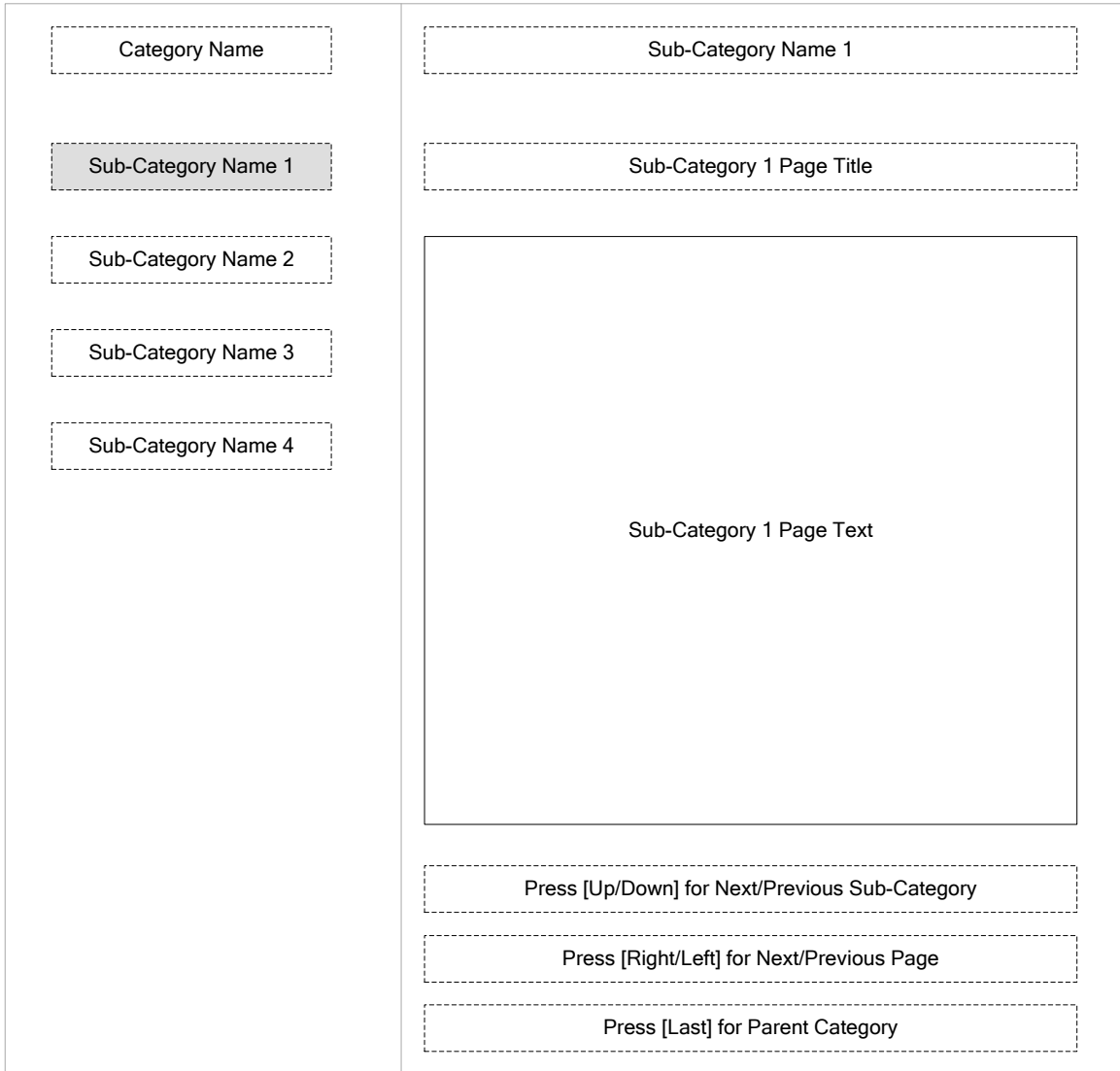


Figure 11.2-3 - Sub-Level Menu Template

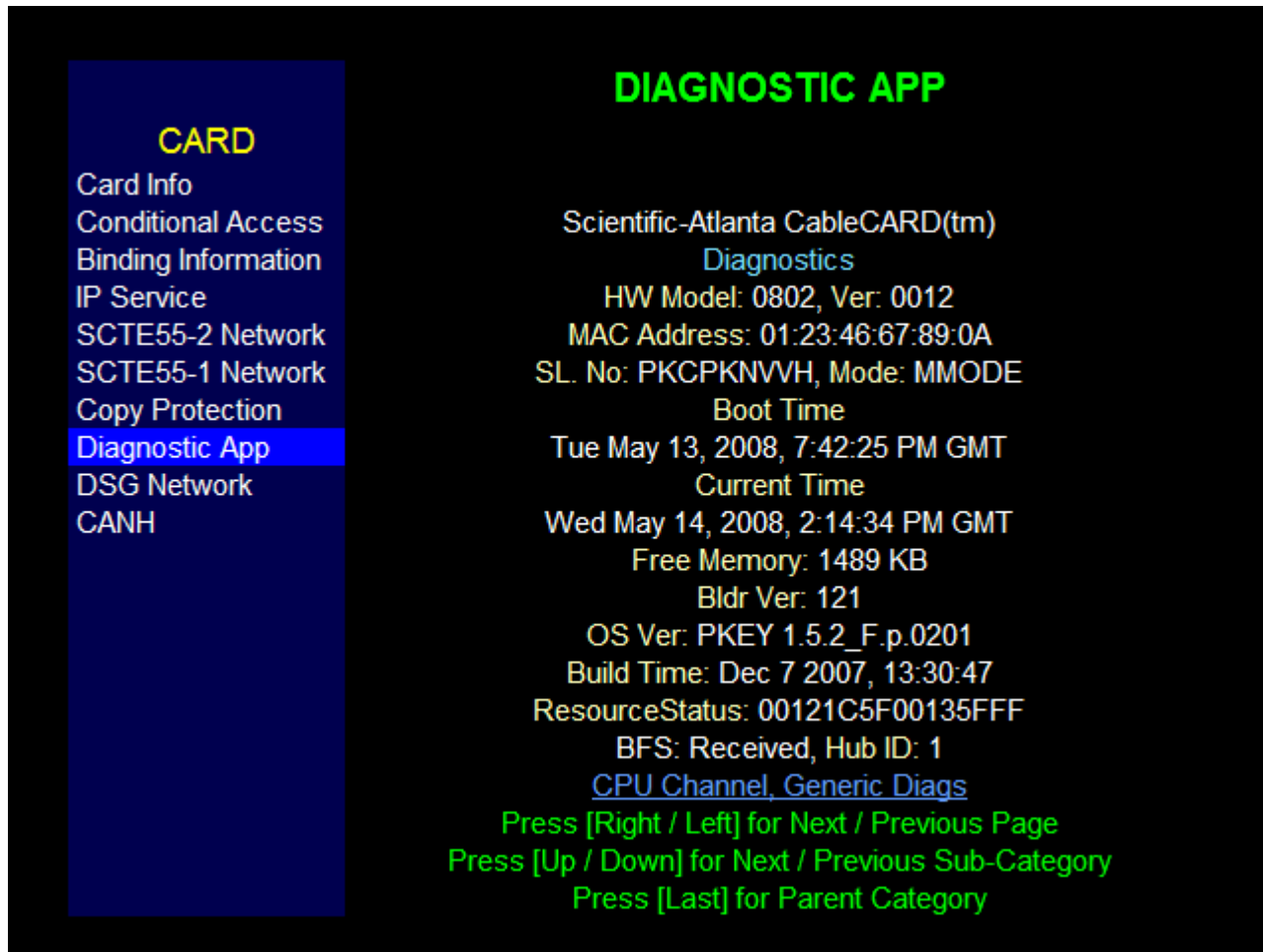


Figure 11.2-4 - Sub-Level Page example

11.2.2 Host Diagnostics Requirements

This section defines the OCTCD hardware diagnostics user interface (UI) requirements.

11.2.2.1 General Requirements

The OCTCD diagnostic screens SHALL be updated by the platform software, including the OS, stack, boot loader, etc.

The OCTCD diagnostics SHALL NOT be updated or written by the guide application (i.e., Passport, iGuide, SARA, ODN, MDN, etc.).

The OCTCD diagnostic UI SHALL be operational when the device is NOT connected to a cable network.

The OCTCD diagnostic UI SHALL be operational when connected to a cable network.

The OCTCD diagnostic UI SHALL be operational whenever the Digital Navigator is operational.

The OCTCD diagnostic UI SHALL be operational whenever the Digital Navigator is NOT operational.

The OCTCD diagnostic UI SHALL be launched according to Section 11.

The OCTCD diagnostic UI SHALL terminate whenever the "Exit" key is received.

The OCTCD SHALL navigate through the various diagnostic UI screen options using the navigational up, down, left and right buttons on the remote control.

The OCTCD SHALL navigate through the various diagnostic UI screen options using the front panel buttons "channel +"(up), "channel -"(down), "volume -"(left) and "volume +" (right) buttons on the front panel.

The OCTCD SHALL use the SELECT key on the front panel or remote control for selecting various options in the diagnostic UI.

If a SELECT button is not available on the front panel, the OCTCD SHALL use the INFO key.

The OCTCD diagnostic application SHALL be capable of displaying diagnostic information with zero, 10%, 20% or 100% translucency. When diagnostic information is displayed in a translucent manner, the content associated with the currently tuned-to channel will be visible behind the diagnostic information.

The OCTCD diagnostic application, when displayed, SHALL default to 10% translucency.

The OCTCD diagnostic application SHALL allow the translucency levels to be cycled through by pressing the GUIDE key on the remote control or front panel.

The information displayed by the OCTCD diagnostic application SHALL be updated every five seconds.

The OCTCD SHALL reboot the platform when the front panel POWER button is pressed and held for 10 seconds or more.

11.2.2.2 Main Menu

This section defines requirements for the Main Menu page in the OCTCD diagnostic UI.

The OCTCD diagnostic application SHALL implement the following behavior for the Main Menu Page:

The OCTCD diagnostic application SHALL default to the Main Menu Page.

The OCTCD diagnostic application Main Menu Page SHALL comply with the Main Menu Page Template defined in Section 11.2.1.1.

The Main Menu Page SHALL have the following options in the Category list of the Category Frame: Summary, Manufacturer Diags, System, Card, and Reboot STB.

Categories for OpenCable Extensions, such as DVR and Home Networking, SHALL be added above the Reboot STB Category.

The Reboot STB Category SHALL always appear last.

The Main Menu Page SHALL default to displaying the Summary Category page in the Page Frame Body.

11.2.2.2.1 Summary Diagnostics Category

There are two pages that can be displayed in the Page Frame when in the "Summary" Category: the "Summary Info" page and the "Error Summary" page.

11.2.2.2.1.1 Summary Info Page Definition

The "Summary Info" page displays summary system information.

The OCTCD diagnostic application SHALL implement the following behavior for the Summary Info page:

The Page Frame Body of the Summary Info page SHALL follow the template as defined in Figure 11.2-10.

The "Page Title" field in the Page Frame of the Summary Info page SHALL be labeled "Summary Info". The Summary Info page is the first page in this category.

The "Summary Info" page SHALL display the Firmware Version and Firmware Release Date as defined in Section 11.1.5.

The "Summary Info" page SHALL display the Provisioning (CP) Status as defined in Section 11.1.14.

The "Summary Info" page SHALL display the Conditional Access Status as defined in section 11.1.14.

The "Summary Info" page SHALL display a group of parameters labeled as "InBand Network" as follows for each tuner:

- Tuner frequency as defined in Section 11.1.8.
- Modulation mode as defined in Section 11.1.8.
- Received Power as defined in Section 11.1.8.
- SNR as defined in Section 11.1.8.
- Carrier Lock as defined in Section 11.1.8.

The "Summary Info" page SHALL display the Power Status as defined in Section 11.1.1.

The "Summary Info" page SHALL display the Boot Status as defined in Section 11.1.2.

The "Summary Info" page SHALL display the Firmware Download Status as defined in Section 11.1.5.1. An example Summary Info Page is shown in Figure 11.2-2.

11.2.2.2.1.2 Error Summary Page Definition

The "Error Summary" page displays all of the high level error information that a field technician uses when first experiencing a problem.

The OCTCD diagnostic application SHALL implement the following behavior for the Error Summary Information page:

The Page Frame Body of the Error Summary Info page SHALL follow the template as defined in Figure 11.2-11.

The "Page Title" field in the Page Frame SHALL be labeled "Error Summary". The Error Summary page is the second page in this category.

The "Error Summary" page SHALL display the Application Signaling Status as defined in Section 11.1.13.

The "Error Summary" page SHALL display the PAT, PMT Timeout Count as defined in Section 11.1.13.

The "Error Summary" page SHALL display the IB, OOB Carousel Timeout Count as defined in section 11.1.13.

The "Error Summary" page SHALL display a group of parameters labeled as "InBand Network" as follows for each tuner:

- Failed Tune Count as defined in Section 11.1.8.
- Last Failed Freq as defined in Section 11.1.8.

An example Error Summary Page is shown in Figure 11.2-20.

11.2.2.2.2 System Diagnostics Category

There are eight pages that can be displayed in the Page Frame when in the "System" Category: the "InBand Network" page, the "OOB Network" page, the "DOCSIS" page, the "DEVICE ADDRESSES" page, the "OCAP APPS" page, the "MEMORY TABLE" page, the "HDMI INFO" page, and the "SEB Status" page.

11.2.2.2.2.1 InBand Network Page Definition

The "InBand Network" page displays information about the state of the InBand signal processing chain.

The OCTCD diagnostic application SHALL implement the following behavior for the InBand page:

The Page Frame Body of the InBand Network page SHALL follow the template as defined in Figure 11.2-12.

The "Page Title" field in the Page Frame of the InBand Network page SHALL be labeled "InBand Network". The InBand Network page is the first page in this category.

The "InBand Network" page SHALL display a group of parameters labeled as "InBand Network" as follows for each tuner:

- Successful Tune Count as defined in Section 11.1.8.
- Failed Tune Count as defined in Section 11.1.8.
- Last Failed Frequency as defined in Section 11.1.8.
- Correctable Errors as defined in Section 11.1.8.
- Uncorrectable Errors as defined in Section 11.1.8.
- PCR Lock as defined in Section 11.1.8.
- MPEG Program number as defined in Section 11.1.10.
- CCI Value as defined in Section 11.1.10.

An example InBand Network Page is shown in Figure 11.2-21.

11.2.2.2.2.2 OOB Network Page Definition

The "OOB Network" page displays information about the state of the SCTE-55 OOB connection.

The OCTCD diagnostic application SHALL implement the following behavior for the OOB Network page:

The Page Frame Body of the Error OOB Network page SHALL follow the template as defined in Figure 11.2-13.

The "Page Title" field in the Page Frame SHALL be labeled "OOB Network". The OOB Network page is the second page in this category.

The "OOB Network" page SHALL display a group of parameters labeled as "OOB" as follows:

- FDC frequency as defined in Section 11.1.7.
- RDC frequency as defined in Section 11.1.9.
- FDC Power as defined in Section 11.1.7.
- RDC Power as defined in Section 11.1.9.

The "OOB Network" page SHALL display the RDC Data Rate as defined in Section 11.1.9.

The "OOB Network" page SHALL display the FDC Carrier Lock status as defined in Section 11.1.7.

The "OOB Network" page SHALL display the FDC SNR information as defined in Section 11.1.7.

An example OOB Network Page is shown in Figure 11.2-22.

11.2.2.2.2.3 DOCSIS Page Definition

The "DOCSIS" page displays information about the state of the embedded cable modem.

The OCTCD diagnostic application SHALL implement the following behavior for the DOCSIS page:

The Page Frame Body of the DOCSIS page SHALL follow the template as defined in Figure 11.2-14.

The "Page Title" field in the Page Frame SHALL be labeled "DOCSIS". The DOCSIS page is the third page in this category.

The "DOCSIS" page SHALL display a group of parameters labeled as "DOCSIS" as follows:

- Downstream Center Freq as defined in Section 11.1.12.
- Downstream Rvcd Power as defined in Section 11.1.12.
- Downstream Carrier Lock as defined in Section 11.1.12.
- Downstream SNR as defined in Section 11.1.12.
- Upstream Center Freq as defined in Section 11.1.12.
- Upstream Power as defined in Section 11.1.12.

An example DOCSIS Page is shown in Figure 11.2-23.

11.2.2.2.2.4 DEVICE ADDRESSES Page Definition

The "DEVICE ADDRESSES" page displays all of the MAC and network addresses for the interfaces within the device.

The OCTCD diagnostic application SHALL implement the following behavior for the DEVICE ADDRESSES page:

The Page Frame Body of the DEVICE ADDRESSES page SHALL follow the template as defined in Figure 11.2-15.

The "Page Title" field in the Page Frame SHALL be labeled "DEVICE ADDRs". The DEVICE ADDRESSES page is the fourth page in this category.

The "DEVICE ADDRESSES" page SHALL display the Card MAC Address as defined in Section 11.1.6.

The "DEVICE ADDRESSES" page SHALL display the eSTB MAC Address as defined in Section 11.1.6.

The "DEVICE ADDRESSES" page SHALL display the eCM MAC Address as defined in Section 11.1.6.

The "DEVICE ADDRESSES" page SHALL display the Card IP Address as defined in Section 11.1.6.

The "DEVICE ADDRESSES" page SHALL display the eSTB IP Address as defined in Section 11.1.6.

The "DEVICE ADDRESSES" page SHALL display the eCM IP Address as defined in Section 11.1.6.

11.2.2.2.2.5 OCAP APPS Page Definition

The "OCAP APPS" page displays information about unbound OCAP applications.

The OCTCD diagnostic application SHALL implement the following behavior for the OCAP APPS page:

The Page Frame Body of the OCAP APPS page SHALL follow the template as defined in Figure 11.2-16.

The "Page Title" field in the Page Frame SHALL be labeled "OCAP APPS". The OCAP APPS page is the fifth page in this category.

The "OCAP APPS" page SHALL display the Application Name as defined in Section 11.1.4.

The "OCAP APPS" page SHALL display the Application Version as defined in Section 11.1.4.

The "OCAP APPS" page SHALL display the Org ID as defined in Section 11.1.4.

The "OCAP APPS" page SHALL display the App ID as defined in Section 11.1.4.

The "OCAP APPS" page SHALL display the Application Status as defined in Section 11.1.4.

11.2.2.2.2.6 MEMORY TABLE Page Definition

The "MEMORY TABLE" page displays information about the amount and type of memory implemented within the device.

The OCTCD diagnostic application SHALL implement the following behavior for the MEMORY TABLE page:

The Page Frame Body of the MEMORY TABLE page SHALL follow the template as defined in Figure 11.2-17.

The "Page Title" field in the Page Frame SHALL be labeled "MEMORY TABLE". The MEMORY TABLE page is the sixth page in this category.

The "MEMORY TABLE" page SHALL display the Memory Type and Memory Size, for each type, as defined in Section 11.1.3.

11.2.2.2.2.7 HDMI INFO Page Definition

The "HDMI INFO" page displays all of the information that is useful when troubleshooting the uncompressed digital video interface.

The OCTCD diagnostic application SHALL implement the following behavior for the HDMI INFO page:

The Page Frame Body of the HDMI INFO page SHALL follow the template as defined in Figure 11.2-18.

The "Page Title" field in the Page Frame SHALL be labeled "HDMI INFO". The HDMI INFO page is the seventh page in this category.

The "HDMI INFO" page SHALL display a group of parameters labeled as "HDMI" as follows for each HDMI output:

- Connection status as defined in Section 11.1.11
- Connected Device type as defined in Section 11.1.11
- HDCP Status as defined in Section 11.1.11
- Horizontal Resolution as defined in Section 11.1.11
- Vertical Resolution as defined in Section 11.1.11
- Frame Rate as defined in Section 11.1.11
- Aspect Ratio as defined in Section 11.1.11
- Scanning Format as defined in Section 11.1.11

11.2.2.2.2.8 SEB Status Page Definition

The "SEB Status" page displays useful information when troubleshooting an SEB server or SEB client.

The OCTCD diagnostic application SHALL implement the following behavior for the SEB Status page:

The SEB Status page SHALL be the eighth page in the SYSTEM category.

If SEB is not supported, the "Page Title" SHALL be labeled "SEB Not Supported".

If SEB is not supported, the Page Frame Body SHALL be blank.

If SEB initialization was unsuccessful, the "Page Title" SHALL be labeled "SEB Initialization Unsuccessful".

If SEB Server initialization was unsuccessful, the Page Frame Body SHALL follow the template as defined in Figure 11.2-5.

If the SEB Server initialization was unsuccessful, it SHALL report the applicable failure reason(s) as defined in Section 11.1.15.

If SEB Client initialization was unsuccessful, the Page Frame Body SHALL follow the template as defined in Figure 11.2-6.

If the SEB Client initialization was unsuccessful, it SHALL report the applicable failure reason(s) as defined in Section 11.1.15.

If SEB Server successfully initialized, the Page Frame Body SHALL follow the template as defined in Figure 11.2-7.

If SEB Client successfully initialized and connected to an SEB Server, the Page Frame Body SHALL follow the template as defined in Figure 11.2-8.

If SEB Client successfully initialized but cannot detect or connect to an SEB Server, the Page Frame Body SHALL follow the template as defined in Figure 11.2-9.

If SEB is supported, the SEB Role SHALL be displayed as defined in Section 11.1.15.

If SEB Server initialization was successful, the "Page Title" SHALL be labeled "SEB Server Status".

If SEB Server is initialized, it SHALL display the Server information as follows:

- The Figure of Merit as defined in Section 11.1.15.
- The Maximum number of SEB Clients supported as defined in Section 11.1.15.
- Number of SEB Clients currently connected as defined in Section 11.1.15.
- The Connected Devices information as defined in Section 11.1.15.

If SEB Client initialization was successful, the "Page Title" SHALL be labeled "SEB Client Status".

If SEB Client is initialized and is connected to an SEB Server, the OCTCD SHALL display the Client information as follows:

- The Server MAC address as defined in Section 11.1.15.
- The Server IP address as defined in Section 11.1.15.
- The Server FOM as defined in Section 11.1.15.
- The Connected Devices information as defined in Section 11.1.15.

If SEB Client is initialized and it cannot detect an SEB Server, the OCTCD SHALL display the condition as defined in Section 11.1.15.

If SEB Client is initialized and cannot connect to a detected SEB Server, the OCTCD SHALL display the reason as defined in Section 11.1.15.

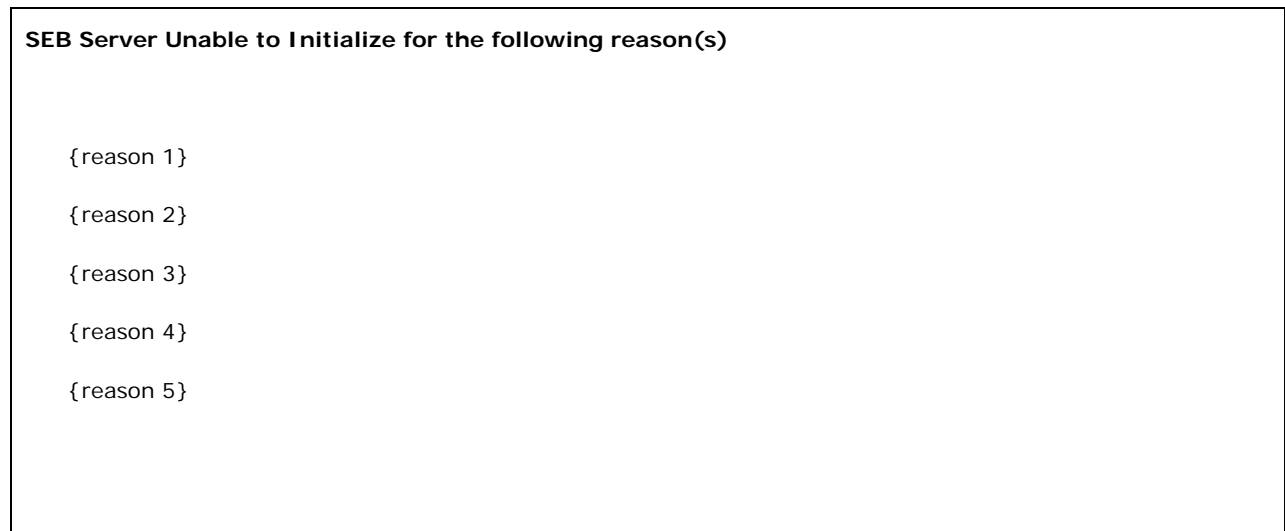


Figure 11.2-5 - Unsuccessful SEB Server Initialization Page Template

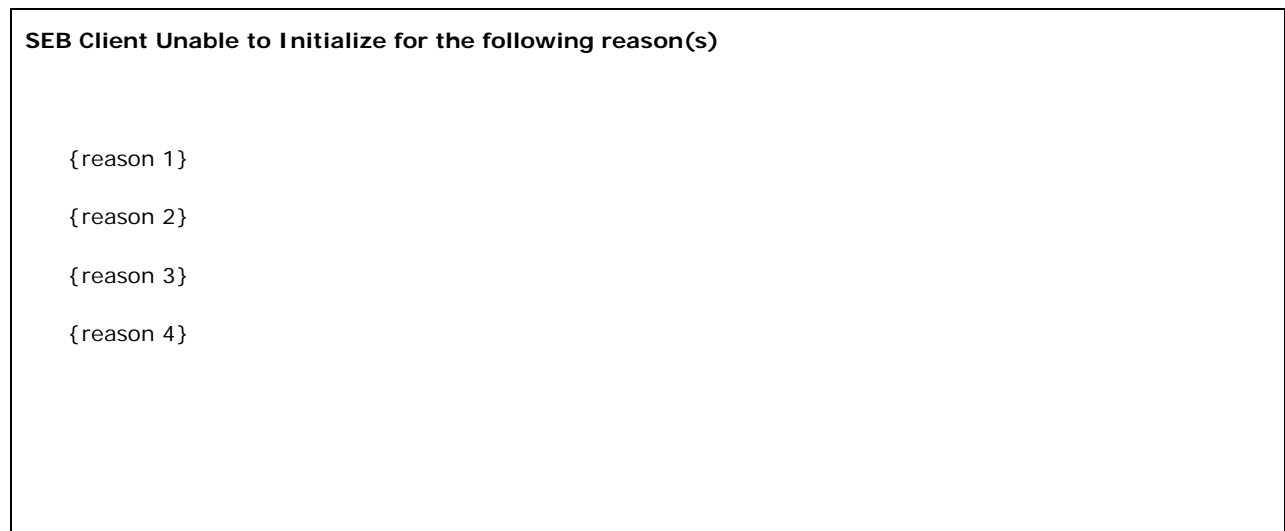


Figure 11.2-6 - Unsuccessful SEB Client Initialization Page Template

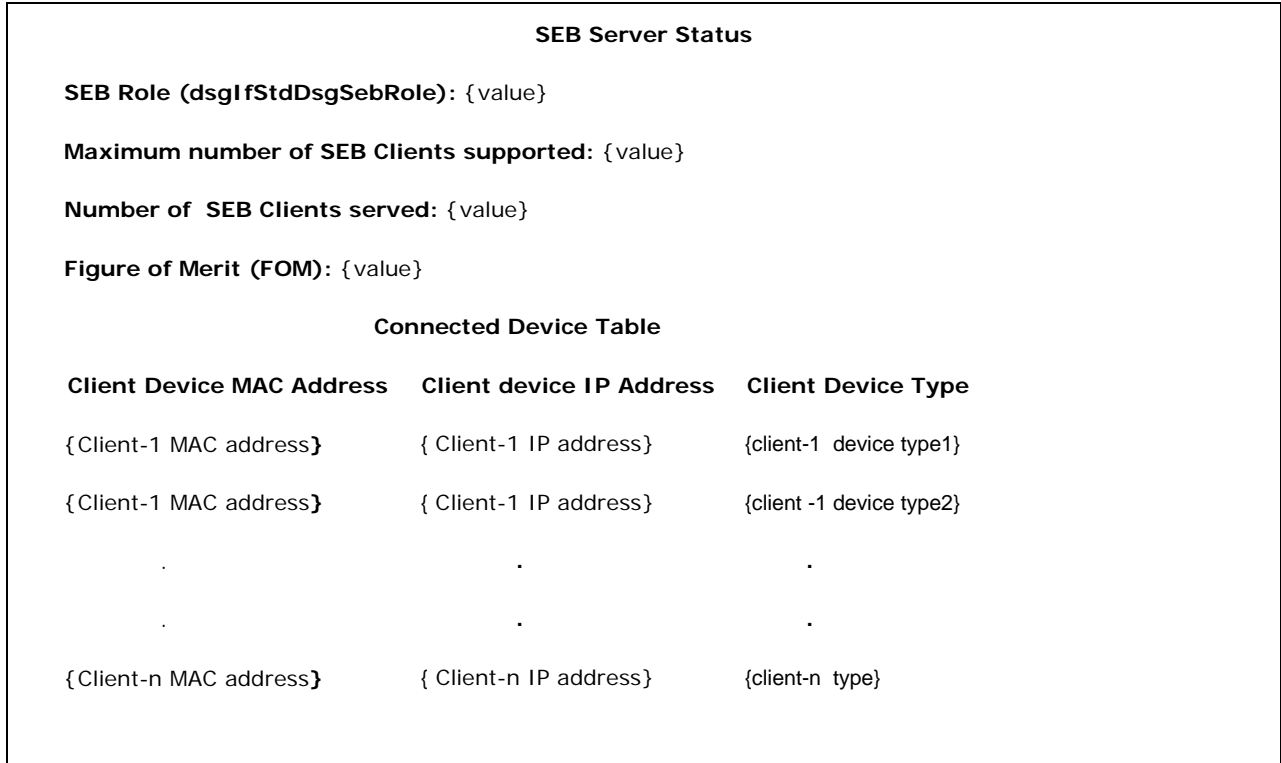


Figure 11.2-7 - SEB Server Status Page Template

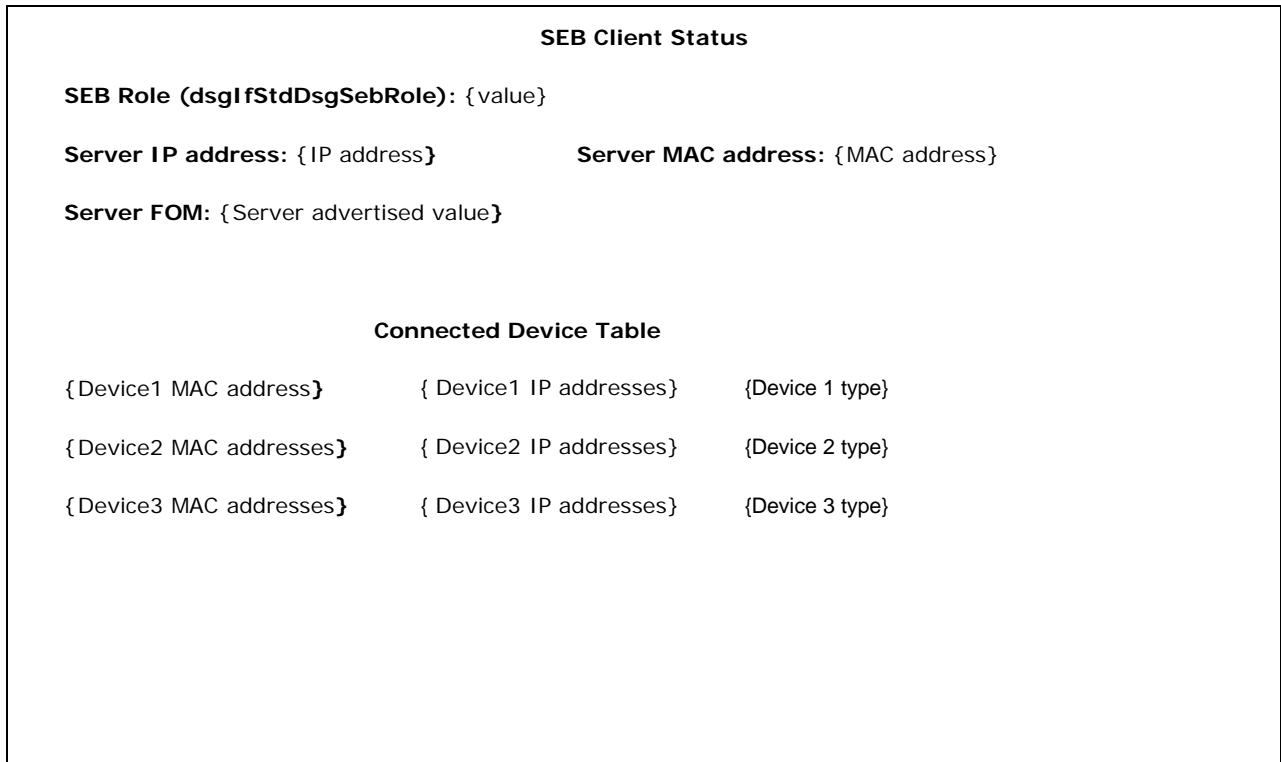


Figure 11.2-8 - SEB Client Status Page Template

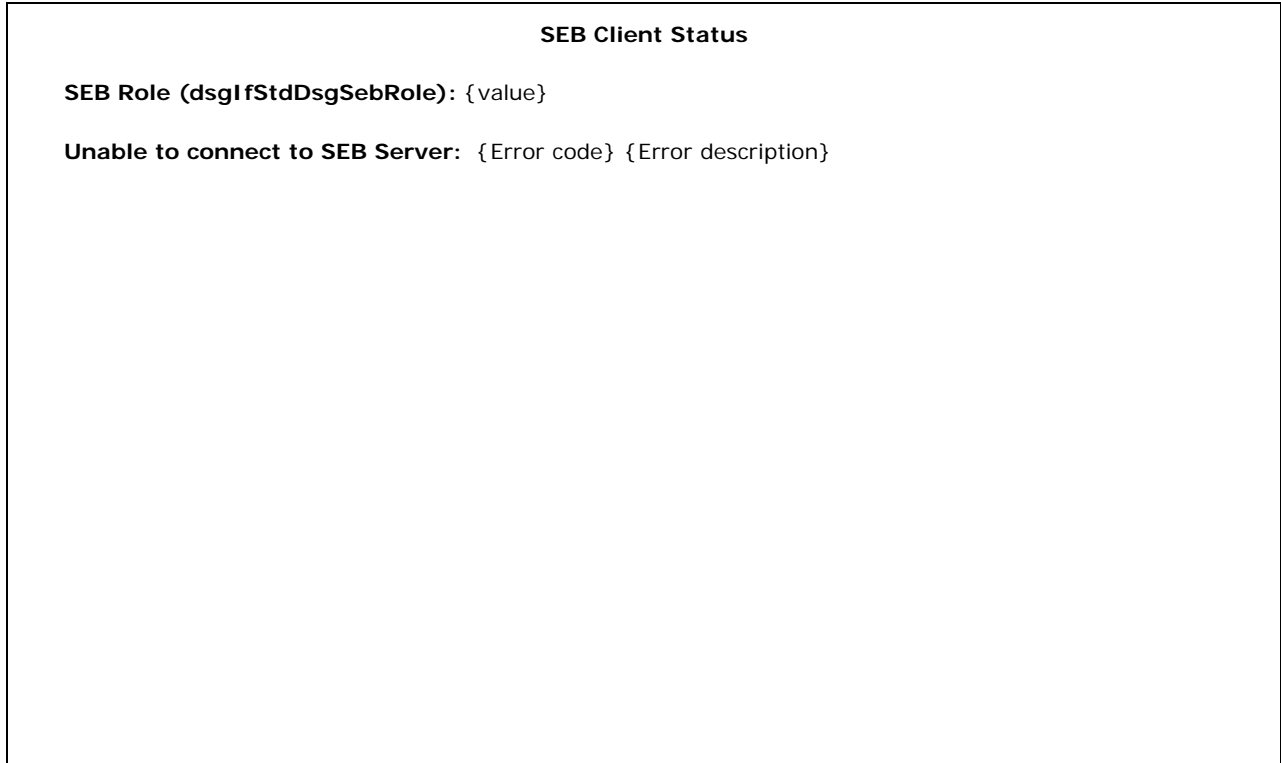


Figure 11.2-9 - SEB Client Status Page - Unable to Connect Template

11.2.2.2.3 *Manufacturer Diagnostics Category*

The Manufacturer Diagnostics page links to extended platform information that a technician can use to debug field issues. These linked pages show host-specific diagnostic information. Some of the options available when selecting this category will vary from vendor to vendor.

The OCTCD diagnostic application SHALL implement the following behavior for the Manufacturer Diagnostics page:

The "Page Title" field in the Page Frame SHALL be labeled "MFG Diagnostics".

A single line of text SHALL be displayed in the Page Frame Body as follows: "Press SELECT key to enter MFG Diagnostics."

If the SELECT remote control key or front panel button is received, the application will proceed to the host-specific Manufacturer Diagnostics Sub-Pages.

An example Manufacturer Diagnostics Page is shown in Figure 11.2-24.

Pressing the SELECT key accesses vendor-specific diagnostics for the DVR's hard disk drive.

11.2.2.2.4 *Card Diagnostics Category*

The Card Diagnostics Category allows access to the summary diagnostics that are available from the Card.

The OCTCD diagnostic application SHALL implement the following behavior for the Card page:

The "Page Title" field in the Page Frame SHALL be labeled "Card Diagnostics".

A single line of text SHALL be displayed in the Page Frame Body as follows: "Press SELECT key to enter Card Diags".

The OCTCD diagnostic application SHALL implement the following behavior when the SELECT key is pressed while the Card Category is highlighted:

A Sub-Level Page is displayed that SHALL meet the requirements defined in section 11.2.1.3.

The Sub-Level Page SHALL contain "Card Info" as the first Sub-Category in the Category Frame. An example Card Diagnostics Page is shown in Figure 11.2-25.

11.2.2.2.4.1 Card Info Page Definition

This section defines requirements for the "Card Info" page. This page is a summary page for all of the Card information. This page is presented when the Card Info Sub-Category is highlighted.

The OCTCD diagnostic application SHALL implement the following behavior for the Card Info page:

The "Page Title" field in the Page Frame SHALL be labeled "CARD INFO".

The Page Frame Body of the Card Info page SHALL follow the template as defined in Figure 11.2-19.

The "Card Info" page SHALL display the Card OOB Mode as defined in section 11.1.14.

The "Card Info" page SHALL display a group of parameters labeled as "CP Certificate" as follows:

- Results of the certificate check as defined in Section 11.1.14.
- Copy Protection Provisioning status as defined in Section 11.1.14.
- Card CCI Challenge Message Count as defined in Section 11.1.14.
- Copy Protection Key Generation Request Count as defined in Section 11.1.14.

The "Card Info" page SHALL display a group of parameters labeled as "CP ID List" as follows:

- Card ID as defined in Section 11.1.14.
- Host ID as defined in Section 11.1.14.
- Card Manufacturer ID as defined in Section 11.1.14.
- Conditional Access Status as defined in Section 11.1.14.
- Copy Protection System ID as defined in Section 11.1.14.
- Conditional Access System ID as defined in Section 11.1.14.
- Generic Feature Resource Identifier as defined in Section 11.1.14.
- Time-Zone as defined as defined in Section 11.1.14.
- Daylight Saving parameters as defined in Section 11.1.14.
- EA Location as defined as defined in Section 11.1.14.
- VCT-ID as defined in Section 11.1.14.

11.2.2.2.4.2 Card MMI Sub-Categories

The Card MMI pages are resident diagnostics screens within the Card itself. The screens can vary between CA vendors' Cards. The diagnostics application presents these pages as Sub-Categories listed below the Card Info Sub-Category.

The OCTCD diagnostic application SHALL provide Sub-Categories below the Card Info Sub-Category for Card applications reported in the *application_info_cnf()* APDU.

There SHALL be one Sub-Category per application reported in the *application_info_cnf()* APDU.

Each Sub-Category SHALL be labeled with the application name reported in the *application_info_cnf()* APDU.

Sub-Categories SHALL be presented in the order found in the *application_info_cnf()* APDU.

Pages for each Sub-Category SHALL be rendered from the HTML retrieved via the application URL reported in the *application_info_cnf()* APDU.

Within a Sub-Category, page navigation via the Right button SHALL follow the first hyperlink in the currently-displayed page. If the page has no hyperlink, the Right button SHALL be ignored.

Within a Sub-Category, page navigation via the Left button SHALL revert to the previous page in the hyperlink chain. If the current page is the initial page for the Card application, the Left button SHALL be ignored.

An example Card MMI Page is shown in Figure 11.2-4.

11.2.2.2.5 Reboot STB Category

This option gives the user the ability to reboot the device.

The OCTCD diagnostic application SHALL implement the following behavior for the Reboot STB Page:

The "Page Title" field in the Page Frame SHALL be labeled "Reboot the STB".

The diagnostic application SHALL display the following text in the Page Frame Body: "Press and hold the SELECT key for 5 seconds to reboot the STB".

The STB reboot SHALL be equivalent to a power reset of the device.

An example Reboot Page is shown in Figure 11.2-26.

Firmware Version, Date:	[ocStbHostSoftwareFirmwareVersion]	[ocStbHostSoftwareFirmwareReleaseDate]
CP Status:	[ocStbHostCardCpAuthKeyStatus]	
CA Status	[ocStbHostCardBindingStatus]	
InBand Network	Tuner-1	Tuner-2
Frequency (MHz)	[ocStbHostInBandTunerFrequency]	[ocStbHostInBandTunerFrequency]
Modulation	[ocStbHostInBandTunerModulationMode]	[ocStbHostInBandTunerModulationMode]
Power (dBmV)	[ocStbHostInBandTunerPower]	[ocStbHostInBandTunerPower]
SNR (dB)	[ocStbHostInBandTunerSNRValue]	[ocStbHostInBandTunerSNRValue]
Carrier Lock	[ocStbHostInBandTunerState]	[ocStbHostInBandTunerState]
Power Status	[ocStbHostPowerStatus]	
Boot Status	[ocStbHostBootStatus]	
Firmware D/L Status	[ocStbHostFirmwareCodeDownloadStatus]	(Error Code, if needed)

Figure 11.2-10 - Summary Info Page Template

Application Signaling	[ocStbHostSoftwareApplicationInfoSigLastReadStatus]	
PAT, PMT Timeouts	[ocStbHostPatTimeoutCount]	[ocStbHostPmtTimeoutCount]
IB, OOB OC Timeouts	[ocStbHostInBandCarouselTimeoutCount]	[ocStbHostOobCarouselTimeoutCount]
InBand Network	Tuner-1	Tuner-2
Failed Tune Count	[ocStbHostInBandTuneFailureCount]	[ocStbHostInBandTuneFailureCount]
Last Failed Freq	[ocStbHostInBandTuneFailFreq]	[ocStbHostInBandTuneFailFreq]

Figure 11.2-11 - Error Summary Page Template

InBand	Tuner-1	Tuner-2
Success Tune Count	[STuneCount]	[STuneCount]
Failed Tune Count	[ocStbHostInBandTuneFailureCount]	[ocStbHostInBandTuneFailureCount]
Last Failed Freq	[ocStbHostInBandTuneFailFreq]	[ocStbHostInBandTuneFailFreq]
Correctable	[ocStbHostInBandTunerCorrectables]	[ocStbHostInBandTunerCorrectables]
Uncorrectable	[ocStbHostInBandTunerUncorrectables]	[ocStbHostInBandTunerUncorrectables]
PCR Lock	[ocStbHostMpeg2ContentPCRLockStatus]	[ocStbHostMpeg2ContentPCRLockStatus]
MPEG Program	[ocStbHostMpeg2ContentProgramNumber]	[ocStbHostMpeg2ContentProgramNumber]
CCI	[ocStbHostMpeg2ContentCCIValue]	[ocStbHostMpeg2ContentCCIValue]

Figure 11.2-12 - InBand Network Page Template

OOB	FDC	RDC
Frequency (MHz)	[ocStbHostQpskFDCFreq]	[ocStbHostQpskRDCFreq]
Power (dBmV)	[ocStbHostQpskFDCPower]	[ocStbHostQpskRDCPower]
RDC Data Rate (kbps)		[ocStbHostQpskRDCDataRate]
FDC Lock	[ocStbHostQpskFDCStatus]	
FDC SNR (dB)	[ocStbHostQpskFDCSNR]	

Figure 11.2-13 - OOB Network Page Template

DOCSIS	
Downstream Center Freq	[docsIfDownChannelFrequency]
Downstream Rvcd Power	[docsIfDownChannelPower]
Downstream Carrier Lock	[docsIfCmStatusValue] (DOCSIS2.0) or [docsIf3CmStatusValue] (DOCSIS3.0)
Downstream SNR	[docsIfSigQSignalNoise]
Upstream Center Freq (MHz)	[docsIfUpChannelFrequency]
Upstream Power	[docsIfCmStatusTxPower]

Figure 11.2-14 - DOCSIS Page

Device Addr	MAC	IP
eSTB	[ifPhysAddress]	[eSTB]
eCM	[eCM1]	[eCM2]
Card	[ocStbHostCardMacAddress]	[ocStbHostCardIpAddress]

Figure 11.2-15 - Device Addresses Page Template

Name	Version	Org ID	App ID	Status
[ocStbHostSoftwareAppNameString]	[ocStbHostSoftwareAppVersionNumber]	[ocStbHostSoftwareOrganizationId]	[ocStbHostSoftwareApplicationID]	[ocStbHostSoftwareStatus]
...
...

Figure 11.2-16 - OCAP APPS Page Template

Type	Size (KB)
[ocStbHostSystemMemoryReportMemoryType]	[ocStbHostSystemMemoryReportMemorySize]
...	...
...	...
...	...
...	...
...	...
...	...

Figure 11.2-17 - Memory Table Page Template

HDMI	HDMI - 1
Connection status	[cStbHostDVIHDMIConnectionStatus]
Connected Device type	[ocStbHostDVIHDMIAttachedDeviceType]
HDCP Status	[ocStbHostDVIHDMIHostDeviceHDCPStatus]
Horizontal Resolution	derived from [ocStbHostDVIHDMIOutputFormat]
Vertical Resolution	derived from [ocStbHostDVIHDMIOutputFormat]
Frame Rate	[ocStbHostDVIHDMIFrameRate]
Aspect Ratio	[ocStbHostDVIHDMIAspectRatio]
Scanning Format	derived from [ocStbHostDVIHDMIOutputFormat]

Figure 11.2-18 - HDMI INFO Page Template

OOB Mode	[ocStbHostOobMessageMode]	
CP Certificate		
Certificate Check	[ocStbHostCardCpCertificateCheck]	
CP Status	[ocStbHostCardCpAuthKeyStatus]	
CCI Challenge Count	[ocStbHostCardCpCciChallengeCount]	
Key Generation Count	[ocStbHostCardCpKeyGenerationReqCount]	
CP ID List		
Card ID	[ocStbHostCardId]	
Host ID	[ocStbHostHostId]	
Card Manufacturer ID	[ocStbHostCardMfgId]	
CA Status	[ocStbHostCardBindingStatus]	
CP System ID	[ocStbHostCardCpIdList]	
CA System ID	[ocStbHostCASystemIdentifier]	
Generic Feature Resource	[ocStbHostCardOpenedGenericResource]	
Time Zone, DST Delta	[ocStbHostCardTimeZoneOffset]	[ocStbHostCardDaylightSavingsTimeDelta]
DST Entry, Exit	[ocStbHostCardDaylightSavingsTimeEntry]	[ocStbHostCardDaylightSavingsTimeExit]
EA Location	[ocStbHostCardEaLocationCode]	
VCT ID	[ocStbHostCardVctId]	

Figure 11.2-19 - Card Info Page Template

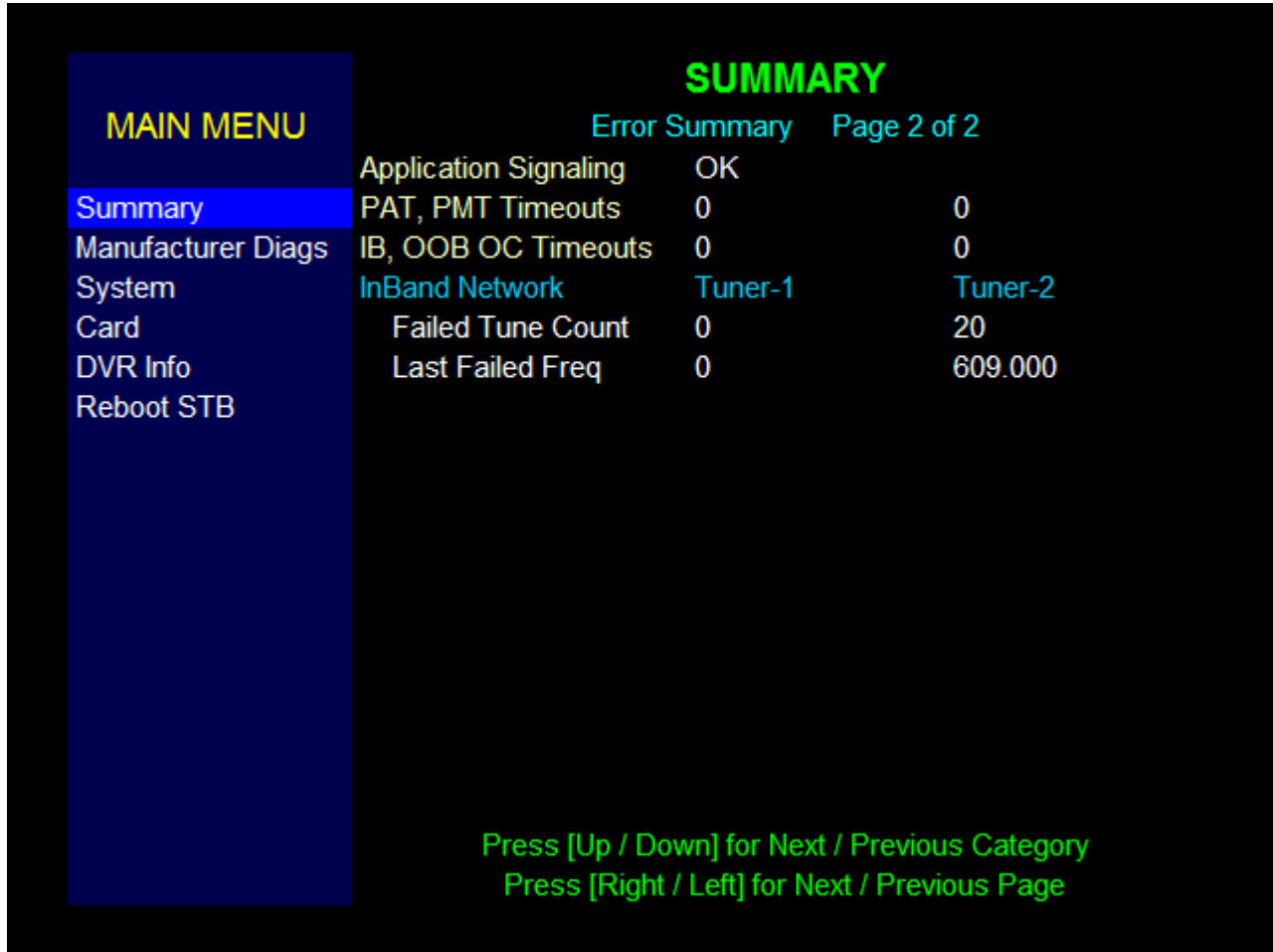


Figure 11.2-20 - Error Summary Page Example

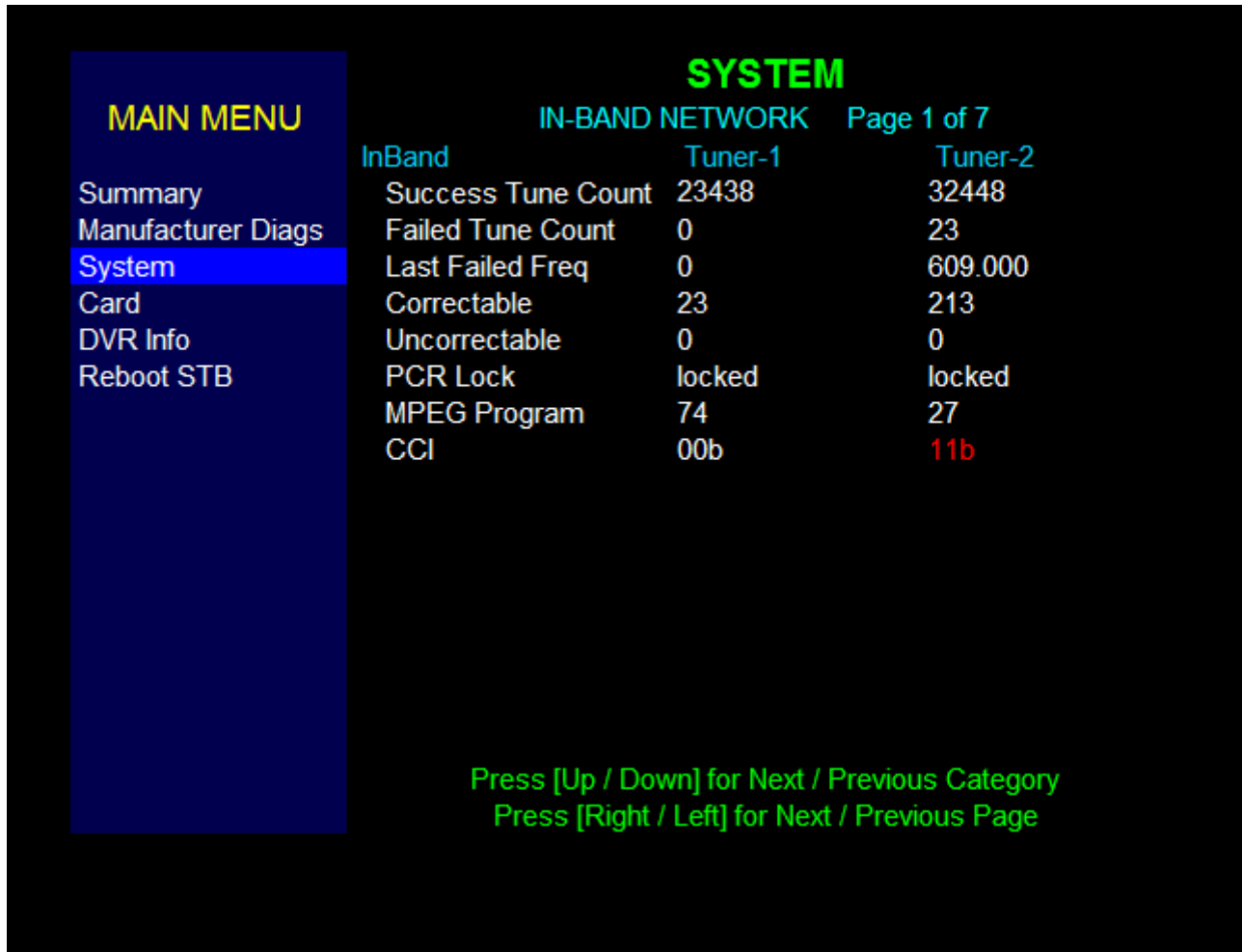


Figure 11.2-21 - Inband Network Page Example

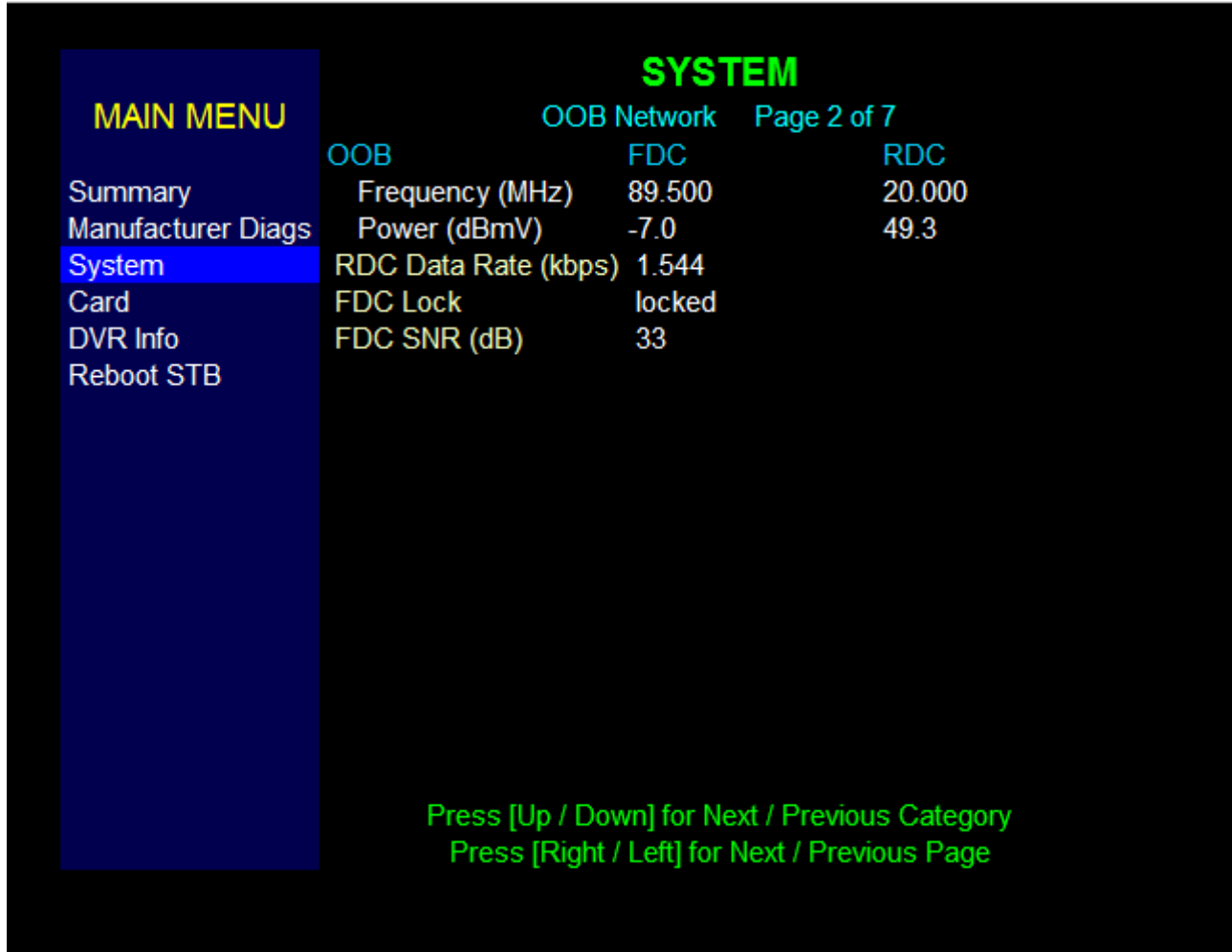


Figure 11.2-22 - OOB Network Page Example

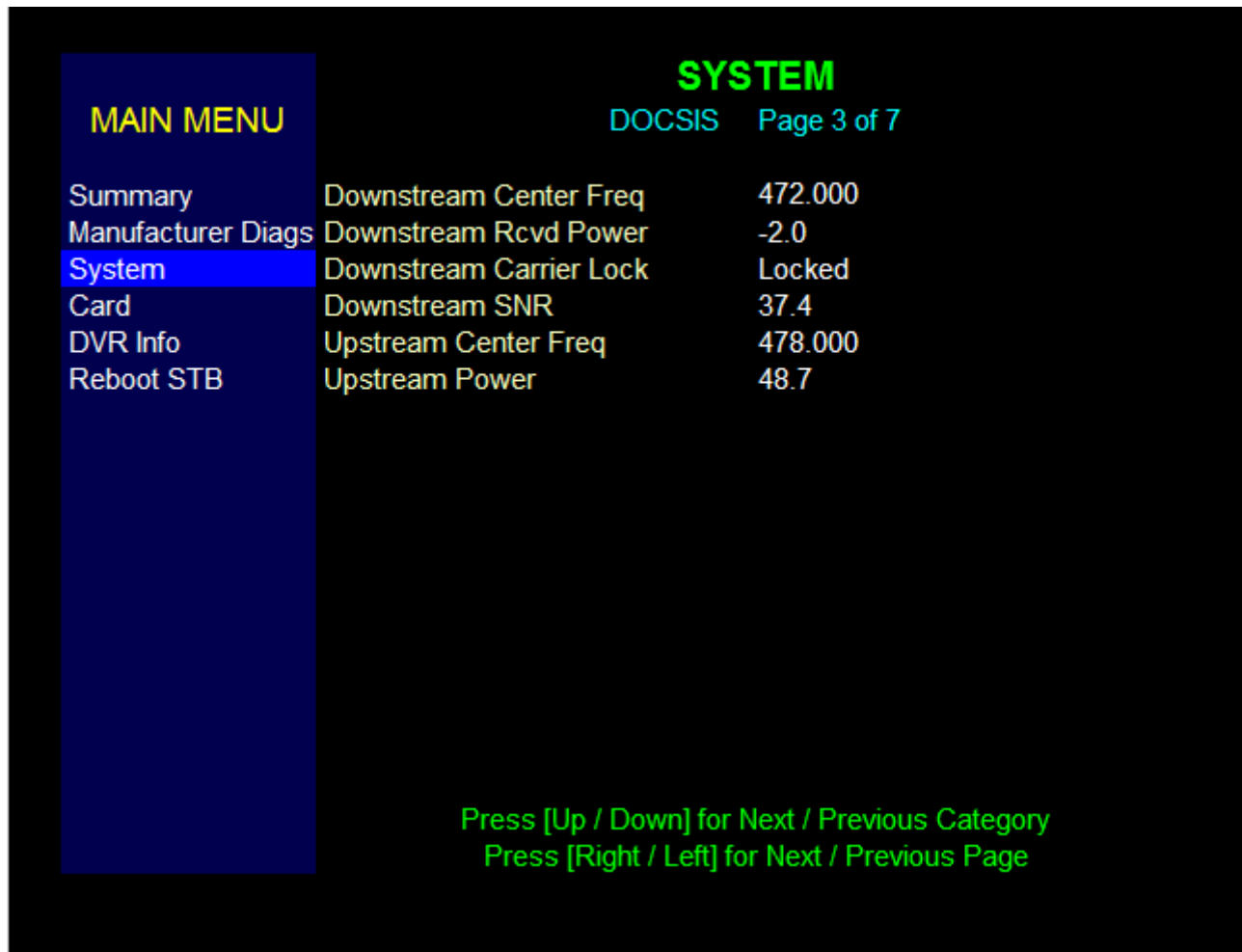


Figure 11.2-23 - DOCSIS Page Example



Figure 11.2-24 - MFG Diags Page Example



Figure 11.2-25 - Card Diags Page Example

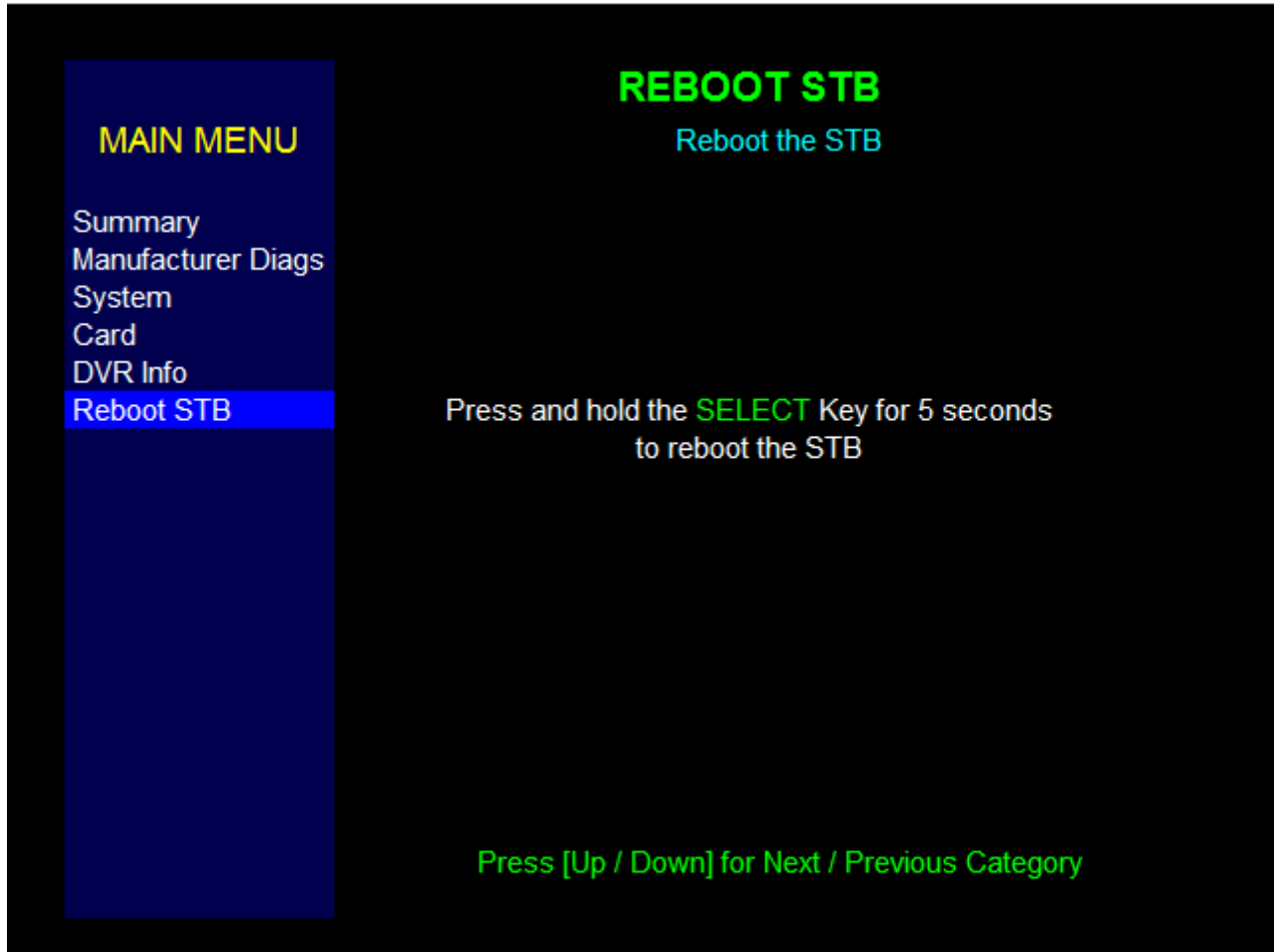


Figure 11.2-26 - Reboot Page Example

11.3 Initialization (Bootup) Screen

The OCTCD supports the display of standardized screens as an installation and troubleshooting aid when deploying these devices on OCAP-enabled cable plants. The process of "booting up" an OpenCable device on a typical plant is a complex set of events, each of which must be accomplished successfully before the device is fully functional. OpenCable Thin Chassis devices are required to render these screens to the digital output. The display of these screens is only applicable when a Card is installed in the Host device.

Note: Video output to digital interfaces is not anticipated until the applicable level of firmware/drivers has been loaded such that the product can drive these interfaces. There is no expectation that the boot loader can or will drive these interfaces.

11.3.1 Initialization Diagnostics

The OCTCD SHALL be capable of displaying the following event and status information upon startup/reboot:

- Boot Status
- Host Validation Status
- OCAP Firmware Download Status

- Card Firmware Download Status
- OCAP Stack Initialization Status
- XAIT Status
- Initial Monitor Application Launch Status
- OOB Initialization Status
- DOCSIS Initialization Status
- eSTB IP Address Acquisition Status
- SI Acquisition Status

Note: The above list does not define a particular sequence of events, since some processes may occur in parallel and some processes are independent of one another.

The OCTCD may display a manufacturer or MSO-specific "splash" screen, if available, until any remote control key is pressed, at which time the initialization screen SHALL be displayed.

The OCTCD SHALL display the initialization screen whenever the device is rebooted or power is cycled.

The OCTCD SHALL NOT display the initialization screen if the device transitions to standby mode during boot up.

The OCTCD SHALL remove the initialization screen from the display under the following conditions:

If the initial application launched is the Monitor Application, the screen is to be removed when the Monitor Application calls `monitorConfiguringSignal()` (see [OCAP]), under the assumption that it will take control of the screen.

The screen is to be removed if an EAS message is received or an EAS force tune is signaled and resumed after the EAS message duration, if the Host Thin Chassis device is powered on.

The screen is to be removed if the host device boot process stalls at a particular step for more than five minutes, to prevent screen burn in, and is to be resumed by pressing any remote control key.

The screen is to be removed if the initial OCAP auto-start application is not a Monitor Application.

The OCTCD SHALL remove the initialization screen from the display if the OCAP Watch TV module has been activated and any of the following events has occurred:

The OCTCD was unable to acquire an XAIT from the network.

The OCTCD was unable to launch the Initial Monitor Application.

11.3.1.1 Boot Status

The OCTCD SHALL display the Boot Status in the following manner:

Once the boot process has started, the OCTCD SHALL display the following text: Booting.

The above text SHALL be displayed in yellow until startup is complete, thereafter displayed in green.

If the boot process does not complete successfully (e.g., low-level software/firmware errors, hard disk drive errors, operating system initialization errors or CCIF initialization errors) the OCTCD SHALL display the following text: Boot Error

The above text SHALL be displayed in red.

11.3.1.2 Host Validation Status

The OCTCD SHALL display the Host Validation Status in the following manner:

If the OCTCD receives the *CP_valid_cnf()* APDU with status = 0x00, it SHALL display the following text:
Host Validation Status = In Progress

The above text SHALL be displayed in yellow.

If the OCTCD receives the *CP_valid_cnf()* APDU with status = 0x01, 0x02, 0x03, 0x04 or 0x05, it SHALL display the following text: Host Validation Status = Failed

The above text SHALL be displayed in red.

If the OCTCD receives the *CP_valid_cnf()* APDU with status = 0x07, it SHALL display the following text:
Host Validation Status = Not Validated

The above text SHALL be displayed in orange.

If the OCTCD receives the *CP_valid_cnf()* APDU with status = 0x06, it SHALL display the following text:
Host Validation Status = Validated

The above text SHALL be displayed in green.

11.3.1.3 OCAP Firmware Download Status

The OCTCD SHALL display the OCAP Firmware Download Status in the following manner:

If the OCTCD has received a signal indicating the start of an OCAP firmware download, it SHALL display the following text, along with a progress bar indicating percentage complete: OCAP Firmware Download [Progress Bar showing % Complete].

The above text SHALL be displayed in yellow until download is complete and thereafter may be displayed in green.

The above text SHALL be displayed only if an actual download has been signaled and started.

If the OCAP Firmware Download does not complete successfully, the OCTCD SHALL display the following text: OCAP Firmware Download Error.

The above text SHALL be displayed in red.

11.3.1.4 Card Firmware Download Status

The OCTCD SHALL display the Card Firmware Download Status in the following manner:

If the OCTCD has received a *firmware_upgrade()* APDU signaling start of a Card image download, it SHALL display the following text, along with a progress field containing one of Started / Complete: Card Firmware Download [Started / Complete].

The above text SHALL be displayed in yellow until the device receives a *firmware_upgrade_complete()* APDU signaling that the download is complete, thereafter displayed in green.

The above text SHALL be displayed only if an actual download has been signaled and started.

If the Card has signaled the start of an image download with the *firmware_upgrade()* APDU and a *timeout_type* value of 0x00, 0x001, or 0x002, and timeout period expires, then the OCTCD SHALL display the following text: Card Firmware Download Error

The above text SHALL be displayed in red.

11.3.1.5 OCAP Stack Initialization Status

The OCTCD SHALL display the OCAP Stack Initialization Status in the following manner:

While the OCAP Stack is initializing, the OCTCD SHALL display the following text: OCAP Stack Initialization

The above text SHALL be displayed in yellow until stack initialization is complete, thereafter displayed in green.

If the OCAP Stack Initialization does not complete successfully, the OCTCD SHALL display the following text: OCAP Stack Initialization Error

The above text SHALL be displayed in red.

11.3.1.6 XAIT Status

The OCTCD SHALL display the XAIT Status in the following manner:

When the OCTCD has validated an XAIT received from the network, it SHALL display the following text: XAIT Acquisition

The above text SHALL be displayed in yellow until a valid XAIT has been acquired from the network, thereafter displayed in green.

If an XAIT is received from the network but does not validate successfully, the OCTCD SHALL display the following text: Error Reading XAIT

The above text SHALL be displayed in red.

11.3.1.7 Initial Monitor Application Status

The OCTCD SHALL display the Initial Monitor Application Status in the following manner:

When the OCTCD has launched the Initial Monitor Application, it SHALL display the following text: Initial Monitor Application Launch

The above text SHALL be displayed in yellow until the Initial Monitor Application has launched, thereafter displayed in green.

If the Initial Monitor Application does not start successfully, the OCTCD SHALL display the following text:
Initial Monitor Application Launch Failed

The above text SHALL be displayed in red.

11.3.1.8 OOB Initialization Status

The OCTCD SHALL display the OOB Initialization Status in the following manner:

If the OCTCD is operating in SCTE-55 OOB Mode and has not received the *OOB_RX_tune_req()* APDU from the Card defining the OOB frequency and data rate, then it SHALL display the following text in yellow: OOB Downstream Established

The above text SHALL be displayed in green when the device is able to acquire carrier lock on the requested OOB frequency.

If the OCTCD is operating in OOB mode and has responded to the Card with *OOB_TX_tune_cnf()* indicating status_field = Tuning granted (0x00), then it SHALL display the following text: OOB Initialization Complete

The above text SHALL be displayed in green.

If the OCTCD responds to an *OOB_RX_tune_req()* APDU with an *OOB_RX_tune_cnf()* APDU indicating status_field = Tuning denied (0x01, 0x02, 0x03 or 0x04), it SHALL display the following text: OOB Initialization Failed

The above text SHALL be displayed in red.

If the OCTCD responds to an *OOB_TX_tune_req()* APDU with an *OOB_TX_tune_cnf()* APDU indicating status_field = Tuning denied (0x01, 0x02, 0x03 or 0x04), it SHALL display the following text: OOB Initialization Failed

The above text SHALL be displayed in red.

11.3.1.9 DOCSIS Initialization Status

The OCTCD SHALL display the DOCSIS Initialization Status in the following manner when operating in DSG 2-way Mode:

If the OCTCD has not received a *DSG_directory()* message from the Card, it SHALL display the following text in red: DOCSIS Initialization

The above text SHALL be displayed in yellow when the Host has received a *DSG_directory()* APDU from the Card indicating that the DOCSIS downstream has been established.

When the Host sends the Card a *DSG_message()* APDU with message_type = 2-Way OK,UCID (0x01), the above text SHALL be displayed in green.

The OCTCD SHALL display the DOCSIS Initialization Status in the following manner when operating in DSG One-way Mode:

If the OCTCD has not received a *DSG_directory()* message from the Card, it SHALL display the following text in red: DSG 1-Way Initialization

The above text SHALL be displayed in green when the Host has received a *DSG_directory()* APDU from the Card indicating that the DOCSIS downstream has been established.

11.3.1.10 eSTB IP Address Acquisition Status

The OCTCD SHALL display the eSTB IP Address Acquisition Status in the following manner:

The OCTCD SHALL display the following text: eSTB IP Address Acquisition

The above text SHALL be displayed in yellow until IP address acquisition is complete, thereafter displayed in green.

If eSTB address acquisition failed, the OCTCD SHALL display the following text: eSTB IP Address Acquisition Failed

The above text SHALL be displayed in red.

11.3.1.11 SI (System Information) Acquisition Status

The OCTCD SHALL display the SI Acquisition Status in the following manner:

The OCTCD SHALL display the following text, where xxx is the total number of virtual channels acquired: SI Acquisition # of Channels = xxx.

The above text SHALL be displayed in yellow until the NIT and STT have been received, thereafter displayed in green.

The # of Channels text SHALL be displayed on the right side aligned with the progress bar for OCAP firmware download.

The OCTCD SHALL report the value 0 as the total number of virtual channels acquired until the VCT has been received.

11.3.2 Display requirements

The OCTCD initialization screen SHALL follow the layout template as defined in Figure 11.3-1.

The OCTCD initialization screen SHALL only display one of OOB Initialization / DOCSIS Initialization Status.

If an MSO-specific logo has been loaded onto the OCTCD, it SHALL display that logo on the initialization screen. Definition of the loading of a MSO-specific logo is outside the scope of this specification.

If the MSO-supplied logo is not available, the OCTCD SHALL display the <tru2way> logo [tru2way] in its place.

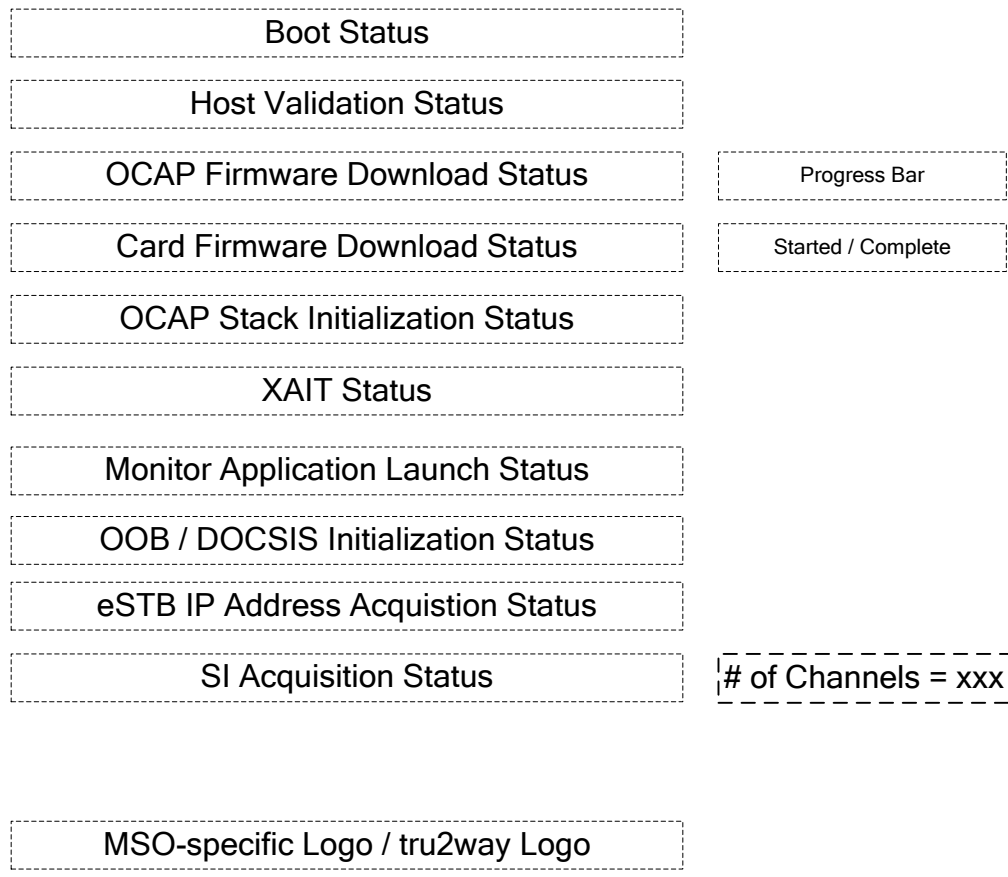


Figure 11.3-1 - Initialization Screen Layout

11.4 Front Panel Diagnostics (Conditional Mandatory)


This section defines requirements for OpenCable Thin Chassis Device (OCTCD) devices that implement the optional Front Panel Extension [OCAP-FP]. It specifies the messages to be displayed on the front panel during boot up of the device.







11.4.1 Standard Boot Messages

If the OCTCD supports [OCAP-FP], it SHALL display the standard boot messages to the front panel LED display as defined in Table 11.4-1.

If the Card upgrade and the host common download upgrade occurs simultaneously, the host device SHALL display the common download progress on the front panel.

Table 11.4-1 - Standard Boot Messages

State	Front Panel Display	Notes
boot	boot 	




State	Front Panel Display	Notes
OCAP Image download	Cd%% 	Front Panel Display should be Cd followed by digits representing the percentage complete of the image download starting at 00 ending at 99.
Card Image Download	 	Alternate “dnLd” and “CArd”
OCAP Stack Init	OCAP 	
XAIT Init	Ait 	To be displayed when the host is in the process of acquiring XAIT after having initialized the OCAP stack.
Initial Monitor App Launch	APP 	The host MUST clear the front panel display after initial Monitor app calls the method MonitorConfiguringSignal().









11.4.2 Critical Error Messages

Critical Errors are those of a nature that prevents cable service from being provided to the device.

If the OCTCD supports [OCAP-FP], it SHALL display the critical error messages to the front panel LED display as defined in Table 11.4-2.

Table 11.4-2 - Critical Error Messages

Error State	Front Panel Display	Comments
Low-level software/firmware errors, hard disk drive errors, OS init errors	Exxx 	xxx = Mfr-specific error code
CCIF Init Error	CCer 	er = item number from [CCIF] Table B-1 Error Handling. The Host reports that subset of interface initialization errors of which it can detect and has knowledge of, and within this class only those that represent critical errors that would prevent cable services from being provided to the device.
Cablecard and Host not bound.	noCA 	To be displayed until mutual authentication binding is completed, as defined in [CCCP] Section 4.1.

Error State	Front Panel Display	Comments
Host not Authorized	noCP 	To be displayed after noCA until Card Validation Status Reply Message is received with a Status_field = 0x06 (Validated), as defined in [CCCP] Section 11.8.
Not bound for Card reasons 0x01	CP01 	To be displayed when the <i>CP_valid_cnf()</i> APDU is received with a status field = 0x01, as defined in [CCCP] Section 11.8.
Not bound, Host Certificate Invalid 0x02	CP02 	To be displayed when the <i>CP_valid_cnf()</i> APDU is received with a status field = 0x02, as defined in [CCCP] Section 11.8.
Not bound, failed to verify Host's SIGNH 0x03	CP03 	To be displayed when the <i>CP_valid_cnf()</i> APDU is received with a status field = 0x03, as defined in [CCCP] Section 11.8.
Not bound, failed to match AuthKey from Host 0x04	CP04 	To be displayed when the <i>CP_valid_cnf()</i> APDU is received with a status field = 0x04, as defined in [CCCP] Section 11.8.
Binding Failed, other reasons 0x05	CP05 	To be displayed when the <i>CP_valid_cnf()</i> APDU is received with a status field = 0x05, as defined in [CCCP] Section 11.8.
Not Validated, validation revoked 0x08	CP08 	To be displayed when the <i>CP_valid_cnf()</i> APDU is received with a status field = 0x08, as defined in [CCCP] Section 11.8.
OCAP Middleware Startup Error	OCxx 	xx = Mfr-specific error code

11.4.3 Non-critical Error Messages

If the OCTCD supports [OCAP-FP], it SHALL display the Non-critical error messages to the front panel LED display as defined in Table 11.4-3.

The Non-critical error messages SHALL alternate with other front panel messages.

Table 11.4-3 - Non-critical Error Messages





Error State	Front Panel Display	Comments
Common Download CVT Error	ECVT 	The conditions under which this error is displayed include, but are not limited to, <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CVT Invalid • CVT Damaged • CVT Mismatch - VendorID • CVT Mismatch - Hardware • CVT Mismatch - HostMACAddress • CVT Mismatch - HostID • CVT Mismatch - GroupID • CVT PKCS#7 validation failure <p>This error condition may be removed after a vendor specific amount of time not less than one minute.</p> <p>If previous platform image is available, boot should continue.</p>
CD Image Download Error	Edxx 	xx = According to Table 11.4-4 <p>This error condition may be removed after a vendor-specific amount of time not less than one minute.</p> <p>If previous platform image is available, boot should continue.</p>
Error Reading XAIT	EAXx 	xx = Mfr-specific error code <p>The XAIT Error Message should continue to be displayed until a XAIT is successfully processed.</p> <p>Video out error message SHALL be displayed for 30 seconds then WatchTV module must start.</p>
Error on Start of Initial Monitor App	IAxx 	xx = Mfr-specific error code <p>Watch TV module must start.</p>

Table 11.4-4 - Error Codes

Error Code	Condition	Comments
Ed02 - Ed25	CVC and image authentication failures	These error conditions correspond to existing error codes defined for MIB object ocStbHostFirmwareDownloadFailedStatus MIB in [HOST-MIB] and codes defined in Table 11.1-1.
Ed26	File not found	
Ed27	Server not available	
Ed90	Downloaded image is corrupt	This error corresponds to the imageCorrupted condition reported by MIB object ocStbHostFirmwareImageStatus.
Ed91	Exhausted maximum number of reboot retries	This error corresponds to the imageMaxRebootRetry condition reported by MIB object ocStbHostFirmwareImageStatus.

Error Code	Condition	Comments
Ed98	General code download failure.	This error corresponds to the imageMaxDownloadRetry condition reported by MIB object ocStbFirmwareImageStatus or any other failure conditions not represented by other defined codes.

11.4.4 General Requirements

If the OCTCD supports [OCAP-FP], it SHALL implement the following requirements with respect to front panel diagnostics:

The OCTCD SHALL alternate the front panel display between the required Non-Critical error code and all other required front panel display messages.

The OCTCD SHALL alternate the front panel display between the required Non-Critical error code and any application messages that are written via the OCAP front panel extension API.

When alternating an error message on the front panel display, the OCTCD SHALL display each message for 10 seconds, then cycle to the alternate message.

The OCTCD SHALL continue to display all error messages until the error condition is cleared.

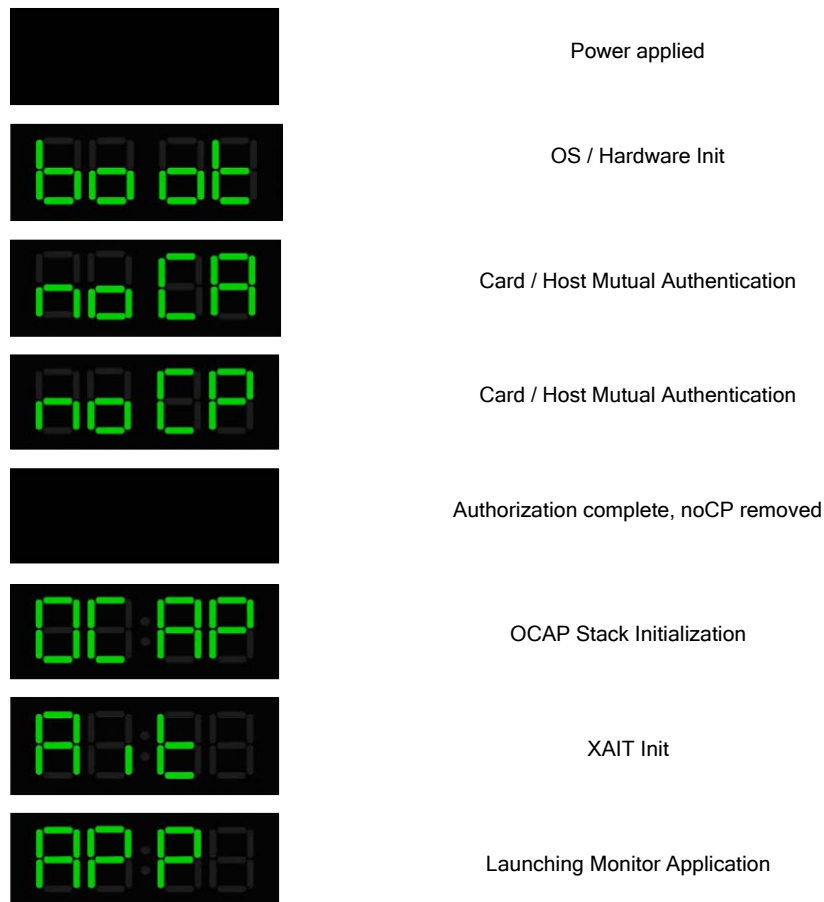


Figure 11.4-1 - Normal Boot Sequence

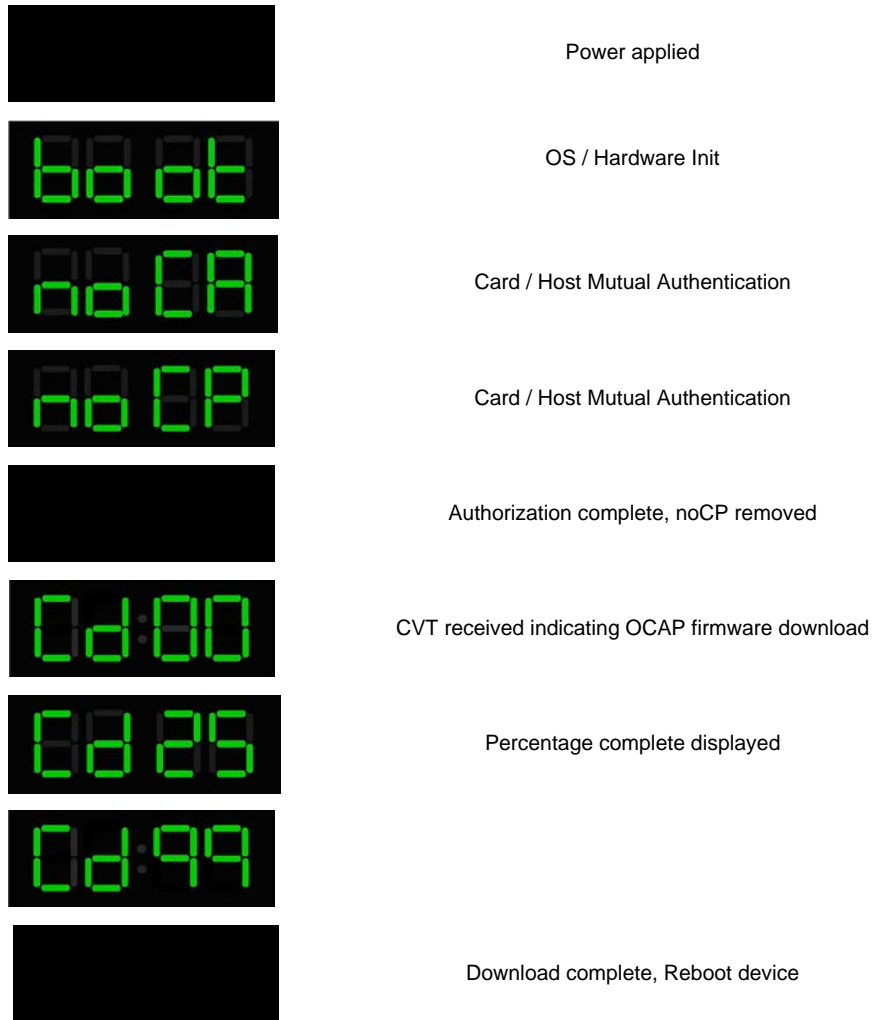


Figure 11.4-2 - Boot Sequence - OCAP Image Download

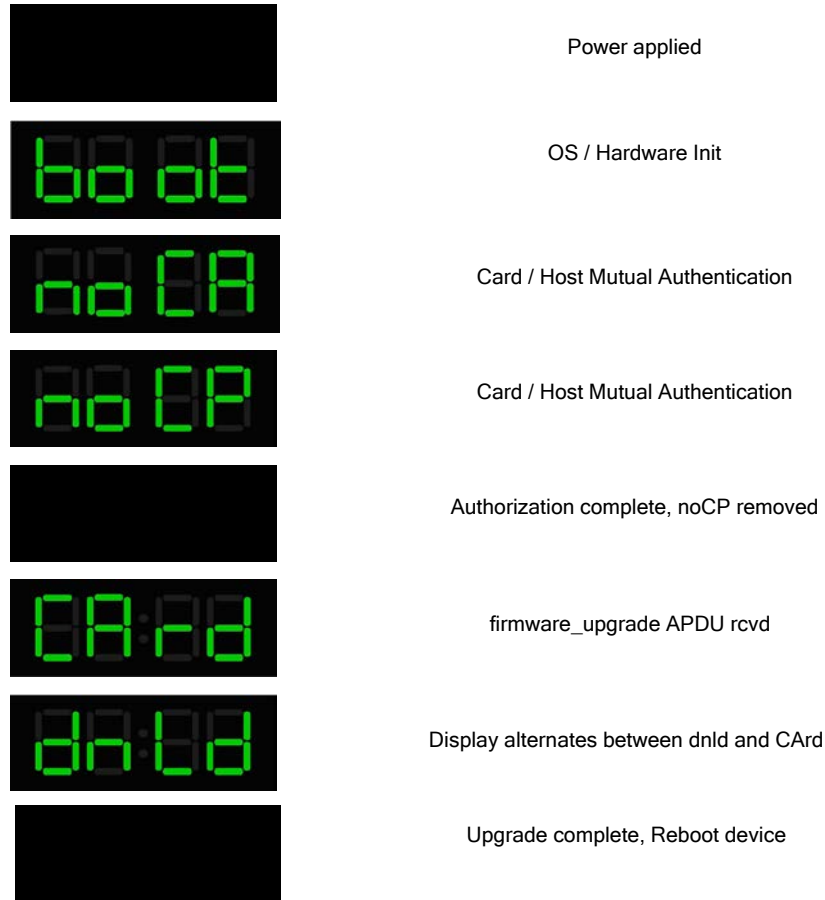


Figure 11.4-3 - Boot Sequence - Card Firmware Upgrade

11.5 Panic Dump Diagnostics

The OCTCD may generate a Panic Dump file as a result of a serious error. The OCTCD supports SNMP Notification using SNMPv2c Trap messages to signal one or more headends when a new dump file is available for transfer. After receiving a "panic dump" Notification, a headend may initiate a binary TFTP session with the OCTCD to transfer the file. Parameters affecting the dump file delivery mechanism are controlled by MIB objects in [HOST-MIB].

The dump file header format is defined in this document. However, the dump file content and format, the triggering event(s), and recovery procedures are vendor-specific and outside the scope of this document.

The steps to enable a Panic Dump file transfer follow.

1. The OCTCD SNMP Notification tables must be configured during initialization using one or more TLV38s. These tables define one or more authorized receivers and Notification PDU requirements (e.g., SNMPv2-Trap-PDU) for each receiver.
2. The Trap Notification is enabled by setting the OCTCD MIB object, `ocStbHostDumpEventCount`, to a positive integer value. Because the default value of `ocStbHostDumpEventCount` is 0, this MIB object must be set via an SNMP Varbind in the eCM configuration file (TLV11) or by an explicit SNMP SET command. Note that the object `ocStbHostDumpEventCount` is persistent through reboots. The `ocStbHostDumpEventCount` is decremented by one each time a dump triggering event occurs until the count reaches zero. If the

ocStbHostDumpEventCount value is greater than zero, the OCTCD must send a SNMPv2-Trap-PDU to a Notification Receiver. Depending upon how the eSTB SNMP Agent is configured, additional SNMP traps or informs may be sent to other Notification receivers, with the caveat that only one Notification is sent per event to each defined receiver. It is incumbent on the system administrator to configure the eSTB SNMP Agent to send notifications in the correct format to the correct destination.

3. The MIB object ocStbHostDumpEventTimeout controls when recovery procedures will commence. When a dump file is generated, the OCTCD informs the SNMP NMS of the event, and then sets a timer for ocStbHostDumpEventTimeout seconds. The OCTCD must initiate recovery procedures when the timer expires, even if a dump transfer is in progress. For that reason, it is important to set the timer value large enough to process both the notifications and the dump file transfer. If the dump file transfer completes before the timer expires, the OCTCD may cancel the timer and immediately initiate recovery. The disposition of the dump file after the timer expiration is manufacturer defined (e.g., deleted).
4. The notification and file transfer mechanism may be tested ad hoc by setting the MIB object ocStbHostDumpNow to 1. This forces the generation of a dump file and the subsequent notification process by the eSTB SNMP Agent.

Figure 11.5-1 below depicts the panic dump process.

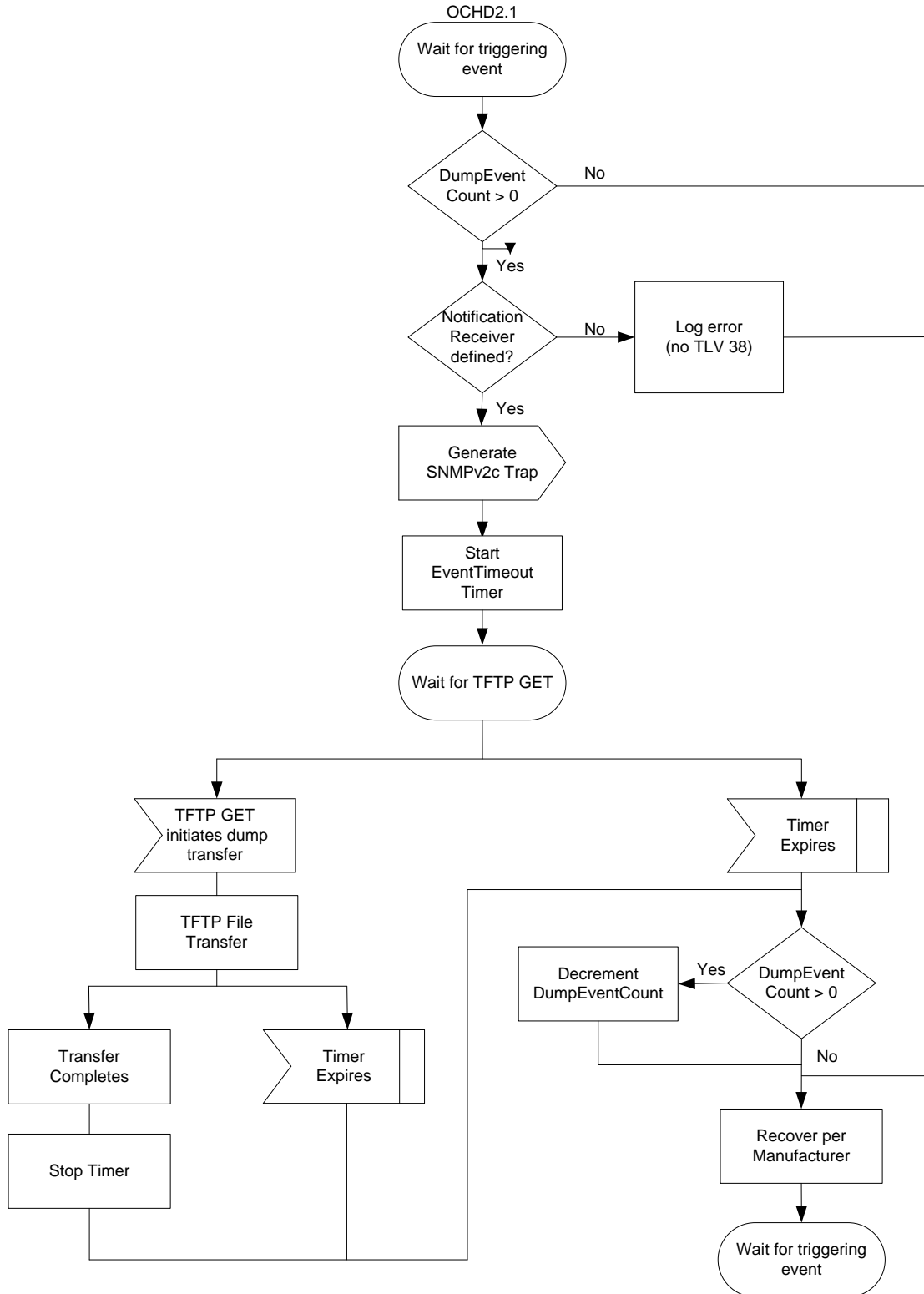


Figure 11.5-1 - SDL Diagram of Panic Dump Process

If the MIB object `ocStbHostDumpEventCount` value is greater than zero, and the panic dump triggering event occurs, the OCTCD SHALL generate an SNMPv2-Trap-PDU.

The OCTCD SHALL include the panic dump file path/filename in the Notification-PDU.

The OCTCD SHALL generate only one SNMP Notification for each panic dump triggering event for each eligible SNMP Notification Receiver.

The OCTCD SHALL store the value of the `ocStbHostDumpEventCount` object in non-volatile memory and restore it after an OCTCD initialization. The value may be overridden by a TLV11 varbind in the eCM configuration file.

The OCTCD SHALL decrement the `ocStbHostDumpEventCount` object value by 1 when a triggering event occurs.

If the MIB object `ocStbHostDumpEventCount` value is zero and the panic dump triggering event occurs, the OCTCD SHALL immediately enter the manufacturer-defined recovery.

The OCTCD SHALL transmit the dump file only when it receives a TFTP "Get" from the headend.

The OCTCD SHALL create a filename for the dump consisting of:

```
<Host MAC Address><date><local time>.dmp
  where date is ddmmyy
  and time is seconds past midnight
  e.g., 00012345678907090819800.dmp
      MAC = 00-01-23-45-67-89
      Date = July 9, 2008
      Time = 5:30 AM
```

The OCTCD SHALL construct the contents of the dump file according to Table 11.5-1.

Table 11.5-1 - Dump File Format (Version 2)

Header	Bytes	Max	Comment
Protocol Header Type	1	0xFF	0x01 - This is a dump from a Panic Dump.
Protocol Version	1	0xFF	0x02 - This is the second version of this protocol.
Reset Delay	1	0xFF	Default value = 5. Value may never be set to 0.
MAC Address	6		CableCARD MAC Address.
Platform Identifier Length	1		Length of the Platform Identifier field.
Platform Identifier	N		The sysDescr object as reported in the Host MIB.
Time Stamp	8		TimeStamp class represents the Network Time Protocol (NTP) timestamp as defined in [RFC 1305] and SNTP [RFC 2030]. It is represented as a 64-bit unsigned fixed-point number in seconds relative to 0-hour on 1-January-1900. The 32-bit low-order bits are the fractional seconds whose precision is about 200 picoseconds. Assumes overflow date when date passes MAX_LONG and reverts back to 0 is 2036 and not 1900. Test for most significant bit: if MSB=0, then 2036 basis is used; otherwise, 1900 if MSB=1.

Header	Bytes	Max	Comment
Message Type	1	0x02	Message Type - defines this message type. 0x01 = host binary dump due to a trigger flag asserting. 0x02 = forced host binary dump triggered by SNMP.
Free RAM	4		Amount of unused random access memory available (bytes).
Allocated RAM	4		Amount of used random access memory (bytes).
Largest Free Block	4		Largest contiguous block of unallocated memory (bytes).
JVM Heap Size	4		Size of the sum of all Java Virtual Machine Heaps (bytes).
Message Length	4		Length of this file - Limited to 128K for DAVIC systems, 512K bytes for DOCSIS systems.
Message Body	M		Message Data - Binary, vendor-specific data to aid in debugging the reason for this message.
CRC32	4		CCIT CRC-32 check number for all above data.

12 MECHANICAL

The OCTCD SHALL be capable of dissipating the heat, while satisfying the requirement of item 15 of Table 12-1, from a Card drawing an average of 1.5 watts across the CableCARD interface.

The OCTCD SHALL have a non-removable nameplate(s) or sticker(s) that includes the following information:

Vendor ID: 24-bit vendor ID represented as 3 bytes (6 hexadecimal digits)

Vendor Name: 40 ASCII characters maximum

Serial Number or Serial No: 40 ASCII character maximum

Note: Vendor ID should be assigned by CableLabs to ensure uniqueness.

The OCTCD SHALL meet the operational environmental / mechanical requirements as specified in Table 12-1.

Table 12-1 - Environmental / Mechanical Requirements

(Meet all operational specs without malfunction, or hard or soft failures, under the following)

	Parameter	Requirement
1.	Required Compliance	All applicable regulatory requirements including, but not limited to: FCC, UL, CSA, and EIA.
2.	Input Line Voltage	95 to 125 volts AC
3.	Input Line Frequency	57 to 63 Hz
4.	Nominal Power Consumption	To be specified in watts by manufacturer
5.	Physical Security/Tampering-Resistance	Secure means of evidencing entry into the security portions of the device.
6.	RF Susceptibility	RF field of 2 volts/ meter from 40 MHz to 1 GHz
7.	Radiated RF	[47CFR15] compliant
8.	Conducted	[47CFR15], ANSI C63.4-1992 compliant
9.	Lightning Surge Tolerance	UL 1409 voltage surge test 38.1, UL 1449, IEEE C62.41, IEEE 587 compliant. RF Input: 1.5 kV at 1kV/usec, 60 amp peak; AC line input: 6 kV, oscillatory 0.5 µsec rise time 100 kHz.
10.	Line Surge Test	FCC part 68, UL 1459, CSA compliant. Metallic: 3500 v minimum at 5 µsec max. rise time and 600 µsec min. fall time, 20 joules min. Longitudinal: 6500 v at 5 µsec max. rise time, 600 µsec min. decay time, 30 joules min. Note: Only applies to a Host with a phone return modem.
10a.	Line Surge Test	UL 1449 Measured Limiting Voltage test Duty Cycle Test Abnormal Over Voltage Tests.
11.	Power Cross (if Host supports phone modem return)	Metallic: will survive 10 events of 600 v, 10 sec duration and operate. Longitudinal: will survive 10 events of 600 v, 10 sec duration and operate.

	Parameter	Requirement
12.	Electrostatic Discharge	IEC 801-2, withstand 10 discharges at 15 kV to each corner and center of keypad, through a 150 pf capacitor in series with 150 ohm resistor, with device chassis grounded to ESD generator.
13.	Brown Out Effects	No corruption of non-volatile memory due to input voltage fluctuations from nominal to zero volts.
14.	Operating Ambient Temperature and Humidity	0° to 40° C and 5% to 95% RH non-condensing humidity
15.	External Surface Temperature (with 125 vac input applied and device on, 25° C ambient temperature, without internal or external fan)	UL 1409 compliant. No external protruding surface point hotter than 50° C for metallic and 60° C for nonmetallic surfaces. No non-accessible surface point hotter than 65° C.
16.	Storage Temperature (non-powered, non-operating)	-20° to +60° C
17.	Storage Humidity (non-powered, non-operating)	5% to 95% RH non-condensing at 40° C
18.	Altitude	Operating: -150 to 10,000 ft. AMSL Storage: -150 to 15,000 ft. AMSL
19.	Thermal Shock	Device meets all operational specs after subjection to: -40° C. for 30 minutes +25° C. for 10 minutes +60° C. for 30 minutes
20.	Humidity Shock	Mil-std-810d method 507.2 Device meets all operational specs after subjection to: raise temp to +60° C and 95% RH over 26 hrs., maintain for 6 hrs., drop to 85% RH while reducing temp to +30° C over 8 hrs., maintain +30° C and 95% RH for 8 hrs. Repeat for 10 cycles.
21.	Solvent Resistance	No external surface deformation effect of common household solvents, cleaners, waxes.
22.	Shipping Vibration	Fully operational after subjection to swept frequency vibration test applied in each of x, y, z planes with excursion of 0.3 inches at a frequency varied from 10 to 30 Hz back to 10 Hz done six times within 30 minutes.
23.	Mounting Feet	No marks or stain to varnished wooden surface after 40° C and 95% RH exposure for 10 days under force of 0.75 kg.
24.	Keypad Keys	Fully operational after subjection to 100,000 cycles of each key through its full travel to closure with a 10- to 12-ounce force applied at 60 times per minute.
25.	Impact Test	Device will not develop any openings creating electrical shock risks after subjection to an impact force of 5 ft. lbs. obtained from a free fall of a 2-inch diameter solid smooth steel sphere weighing 1.18 lbs.
26.	Static Load on Keypad Keys	No mechanical damages or visible deformation after keypad subjection to a static load of 25 lbs. in the direction of operation of the keys.
27.	Handling Drop Test	Device fully operational and not develop any openings exposing risk of electrical shock after subjection to one drop on the face of the device from a height of 20 inches onto a 2-inch thick smooth surface concrete floor.
28.	Strain Relief Test	For permanently attached power supply cords, device will withstand steady pull force of 35 lbs. applied to the cord.

	Parameter	Requirement
29.	Non-volatile Memory Battery Life	Batteries used to back up non-volatile memory will have a minimum life of: unplugged: 1.5 yrs storage life @ 60° C or less; powered 8 yrs @ 40° C or less.
30.	Microphonic Shock	Device will remain error- or interference-free (i.e., no audio pops, clicks, no data errors, no video artifacts) when subjected to tapping with a reasonable force by placing device on a hard surface without padding or mats and inducing 20 taps from knuckles, flat hands, fists, finger nails, screwdriver handles, plastic hammers to all external surfaces of the device.

13 DSG MODE OPERATION

This section details the OpenCable Host Thin Chassis operation when using the DSG channel for Out-of-Band communication in Advanced DSG mode. There is some overlap between this section and both the DSG and Card interface specifications. This section is not intended to contradict or redefine anything listed in the other specifications.

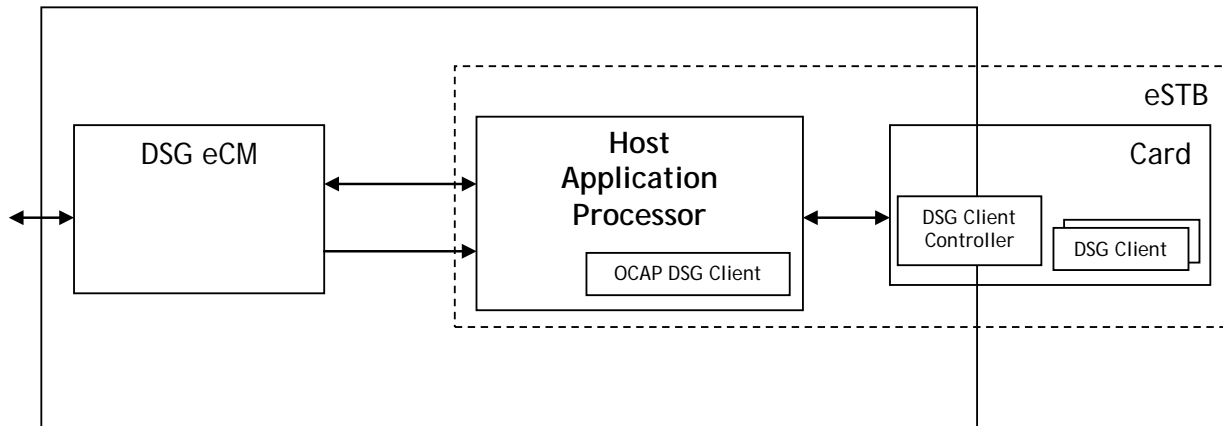


Figure 13-1 - Host Thin Chassis DSG architecture

In Advanced DSG mode, SCTE 65 SI messages, SCTE 18 EAS messages, CVTs, and OCAP XAITs may be terminated directly in the OCTCD or may be received by the OCTCD via the Extended channel.

In Advanced DSG Mode using Extended Channel resource version 3 or 4, all SCTE 65 SI messages, SCTE 18 EAS messages, CVTs, and OCAP XAITs SHALL be received by the OCTCD via an Extended channel MPEG flow.

In Advanced DSG Mode, the return path is through the DOCSIS upstream channel. In Advanced DSG one-way mode, the DOCSIS return path is not present or has been disabled. If the OCTCD is acting as a Set-top Extender Bridge (SEB) Client, as per [DSG], then the return path is through the DOCSIS upstream channel of the SEB Server via the home network interface.

In Advanced DSG Mode using the DSG resource and Extended Channel resource version 5, all SCTE 65 SI messages, SCTE 18 EAS messages, CVTs, and OCAP XAITs SHALL be received directly by the OCTCD directly from the eCM or via an Extended channel MPEG flow as signaled by the Card in the *DSG_directory()* APDU. In that APDU, *dir_entry_type* = 0x01 indicates that the data is provided via DSG directly from the eCM, while *dir_entry_type* = 0x02 indicates that the data is provided via an Extended channel MPEG flow.

If the OCTCD receives the *dir_entry_type* = 0x01 (ADSG Filter) for SCTE 65 SI messages, SCTE 18 EAS messages, CVTs, or OCAP XAITs in the *DSG_directory()* APDU, it SHALL use the associated DSG filter to acquire the indicated flow directly from the eCM.

If the OCTCD receives the *dir_entry_type* = 0x01 (ADSG Filter) in the *DSG_directory()* APDU and does not recognize the *dsg_client_id*, it SHALL ignore the ADSG Filter associated with this entry (that is, these parameters are not forwarded to the eCM).

If the OCTCD receives the *dir_entry_type* = 0x02 for SCTE 65 SI messages, SCTE 18 EAS messages, CVTs, or OCAP XAITs in the *DSG_directory()* APDU, it SHALL open an Extended channel MPEG flow for the SI Base PID using the *new_flow_req()* APDU to acquire the indicated flow.

If the OCTCD receives SCTE 65 SI messages, SCTE 18 EAS messages, CVTs, or OCAP XAITs over both a DSG Broadcast Tunnel and an Extended channel MPEG flow, the information on the Broadcast Tunnel SHALL take precedence.

On some cable plants, the SCTE 65 Broadcast tunnel might contain more than one Virtual Channel Table designated by different vct_ids. The Card determines the correct vct_id and passes this to the OCTCD. If the Card does not pass a vct_id to the OCTCD, the device uses a default vct_id.

The vct_id sent by the Card in the *DSG_directory()* APDU SHALL be used by the OCTCD to identify the correct Virtual Channel Table from the SCTE 65 Broadcast tunnel when multiple instances of the VCT are present.

The OCTCD SHALL use the Virtual Channel Table containing the default vct_id value of zero (0x0000) unless notified by the Card to use a different value.

The OCTCD SHALL use the default vct_id of zero (0x0000) to identify the Virtual Channel Table after a power cycle or reboot.

In some systems, it might be necessary to use UCID of the DOCSIS upstream channel to facilitate regionalization. The DCD message can contain UCID as a classifier for specific DSG Tunnels.

If a UCID other than 0x00 is included with the ADSG_Filter() table as part of an entry in the *DSG_directory()* APDU, the OCTCD SHALL use this UCID as a classifier to determine which tunnels to open when the eCM UCID has been acquired.

The OCTCD SHALL NOT use UCID as a classifier to determine which tunnels to open when operating in One-Way mode or the eCM UCID is unknown.

If UCID = 0x00 is included with the ADSG_Filter() table as part of an entry in the *DSG_directory()* APDU, the OCTCD SHALL NOT use UCID as a classifier to determine which tunnels to open.

In Advanced DSG mode, UDP/IP packets delivered directly to DSG clients on the OCTCD may have a multicast IP destination address that does not have the IP multicast address to multicast MAC Address mapping as defined in [RFC 1112]. DSG clients on the OCTCD are expected to disregard any mapping between IP multicast address and Ethernet multicast address and consume all IP packets delivered to the DSG client on the applicable DSG Tunnel(s).

The following messages are used for Advanced DSG mode configuration when a session to the DSG resource has been opened:

- *inquire_DSG_mode ()* - The OCTCD can query the Card for the preferred operational mode for the network.
- *set_DSG_mode ()* - The Card can inform the OCTCD of the preferred operational mode for the network, either QPSK mode, Advanced DSG mode, or Advanced DSG One-way mode.
- *DSG_error ()* - The Card can inform the OCTCD of errors that occur while operating in Advanced DSG mode.
- *DSG_directory ()* - The Card uses the DSG_directory() APDU to pass DSG Advanced Mode configuration parameters.
- *send_DCD_info ()* - The Card/OCTCD uses the send_DCD_info() to pass TLVs contained in the DCD message.
- *DSG_message ()* - This message is used by the OCTCD to pass the upstream channel ID (UCID) to the Card or to indicate certain eCM operational states.

The eCM in the OCTCD SHALL be implemented according to [RFIPv2.0] for DOCSIS 2.0 implementations or [MULIPv3.0] for DOCSIS 3.0 implementations, and support IPv6 according to [IPv6].

The eCM in the OCTCD SHALL comply with the requirements specified in [eDOCSIS].

The OCTCD SHALL implement the eSTB eSAFE (embedded Service/Application Functional Entity) as specified in [eDOCSIS].

The OCTCD SHALL implement the eSTB logical interfaces according to [eDOCSIS].

The OCTCD SHALL NOT implement the DSG Client Controller (DSGCC) function as specified in [DSG].

The eCM in the OCTCD SHALL NOT operate in any DSG mode until the operational mode is established by the DSGCC in the *set_DSG_mode()* APDU.

The eCM in the OCTCD SHALL NOT operate in any DSG mode in the absence of a Card, i.e., tunnel packet forwarding disabled.

The eCM in the OCTCD SHALL remain tuned to a valid DSG channel and continue to forward tunnel packets to the eSTB regardless of the state of upstream channel connectivity.

When operating in Advanced DSG Mode, the OCTCD SHALL NOT determine the validity of or make decisions regarding DCD messages received from the eCM except as defined in [DSG].

The OCTCD SHALL support Advanced mode as defined in [DSG].

The OCTCD SHALL provide a packet buffer with a minimum size of 16 kilobytes for receiving DSG tunnel traffic and DCD fragments.

Note: This buffer is for the temporary storage of packets received by the eCM before they are forwarded across the Card interface. Even though DSG tunnels may be rate-shaped individually to a total of 2.048 Mbps, they are not rate-shaped as an aggregate. This buffer size assumes maximum length packets arriving from eight different tunnels back-to-back plus space for DCD message fragments.

13.1 DSG mode selection

1. After initialization, authentication and binding are completed, the OCTCD operates in SCTE 55 mode while the Card downloads a configuration message from the network controller indicating the desired operational mode.
2. The Card prepares for the transfer of DSG tunnel packets over the Extended Channel by issuing the *new_flow_req()* APDU to the OCTCD with *service_type* = 0x03 (DSG). The OCTCD responds with the *new_flow_cnf()* APDU with *status_field* = 0x00 (Request granted) and assigns a unique Flow_ID regardless of whether the OCTCD is currently operating in the SCTE 55 mode or in any DSG mode and the DSG flow has not been established.
3. If DSG advanced mode is to be established, the Card sends the *set_DSG_mode()* APDU to the OCTCD and signals either *Advanced_DSG_mode* or *Advanced_DSG_One-Way_mode* depending on whether the upstream transmitter is to be enabled or not.
4. The OCTCD MAY issue the *inquire_DSG_mode()* APDU to query the Card as to which operational mode will be used. In either case, eCM initialization will not commence until one of the DSG modes is set by the Card.

Upon receiving the *new_flow_req()* APDU with *service_type* = 0x03 (DSG), the OCTCD SHALL grant the DSG flow regardless of whether the OCTCD is operating in the SCTE 55 mode or operating in any DSG mode and the DSG flow has not been established.

When the OCTCD sends the *new_flow_cnf()* APDU as a response to the *new_flow_req()* APDU with *service_type* = 0x03 (DSG), the *status_field* of the *new_flow_cnf()* APDU SHALL only contain the value 0x00 or 0x01.

If the OCTCD receives a *set_DSG_mode()* APDU to switch to any DSG mode while operating in the SCTE 55 mode, it SHALL discard any SI data (including the SI tables stored in non-volatile memory acquired when the OCTCD was in SCTE 55 mode), and any EAS data that it received from the Card in the SCTE 55 mode.

If the OCTCD receives a *set_DSG_mode()* APDU to switch to SCTE 55 mode or a different DSG mode. while operating in any DSG mode, it SHALL discard any SI data (including the SI tables stored in non-volatile memory), and any EAS data that it received from the Card in the DSG mode.

Upon receipt of a *set_DSG_mode()* APDU containing *operational_mode* not equal to SCTE 55, the OCTCD SHALL delete any SCTE 55-related Extended channel flows prior to requesting DSG related Extended channel flows.

The OCTCD SHALL terminate the use of the SCTE 55 FDC receiver until a *set_DSG_mode()* APDU is received with *operational_mode* equal to SCTE_55.

Upon receipt of a *set_DSG_mode()* APDU containing *operational_mode* equal to SCTE_55, the OCTCD SHALL delete any Advanced DSG-related Extended channel flows prior to requesting SCTE_55 related Extended channel flows.

The OCTCD SHALL terminate the use of the eCM until a *set_DSG_mode()* APDU is received with *operational_mode* not equal to SCTE_55.

The OCTCD SHALL verify the IP packet header checksum before sending any DSG packets to the Card over an Extended channel DSG flow.

13.2 DSG Advanced Mode Operation

The following steps define the flow of Advanced DSG mode in an OCTCD when using the DSG resource:

1. Once an ADSG operational mode has been established, the OCTCD begins to scan for a valid DSG channel. The DSG eCM downstream scan is identical to the standard DOCSIS scan with the additional requirement that the downstream contain a DCD message.
2. When the eCM finds a DOCSIS channel containing a DCD message, the OCTCD sends the contents of the DCD message to the Card using the *send_DCD_info()* APDU. If the Card determines that the downstream channel is valid, it sends the *DSG_directory()* APDU to the OCTCD containing a list of DSG filters available for OCTCD use, and also a list of DSG filters identifying DSG packets to be forwarded to the Card. The eCM will then remain on the current downstream channel. If the Card determines that the downstream channel is not valid, it sends a *DSG_error()* APDU to the OCTCD with the *error_status* field set to *invalid_dsg_channel*, and the eCM will resume the downstream scan.
3. If the eCM scans the entire downstream spectrum and does not find a DOCSIS channel containing a DCD message, the OCTCD issues the *DSG_message()* APDU with *message_type* 0x03 (Downstream_Scan_Completed) to inform the Card that it has done a complete scan. At this point, or at any other time, the Card may switch to another out-of-band mode by issuing a *set_DSG_mode()* APDU.

After the OCTCD issues the *DSG_message()* APDU with *message_type* 0x03 (Downstream_Scan_Completed), it SHALL immediately initiate another downstream scan.

4. As soon as the OCTCD receives the *DSG_directory()* APDU, it can begin forwarding DSG packets to the Card (or terminate DSG packets directly) while the eCM continues the normal DOCSIS initialization sequence.

5. When DOCSIS registration is complete and eCM forwarding is not restricted, the OCTCD indicates to the Card that 2-Way operation is functional by issuing the *DSG_message()* APDU with message_type 0x01 (2-way OK,UCID), with the value of UCID set to 255.

When the OCTCD supports SEB per [DSG], it SHALL comply with the following:

The OCTCD SHALL initiate the DSG Set-top Extender Bridge (SEB) operation, attempting to become a DSG SEB Server if it completes DOCSIS registration,

If the OCTCD fails to complete DOCSIS registration, it SHALL initiate SEB Client operation and attempt to locate an SEB Server before notifying the Card that it has transitioned to one-way mode.

If the OCTCD locates an SEB Server and has acquired the IP address mode and UCID from the Server, it SHALL indicate to the Card that 2-Way operation is functional by issuing the *DSG_message()* APDU with message_type 0x01 (2-way OK, UCID).

The OCTCD SHALL notify the Card of DOCSIS registration failure by sending *DSG_message()* indicating *Entering_One-Way_mode* only after it has failed to locate an SEB Server.

When operating as an SEB Client, the OCTCD disables all upstream transmissions and only utilizes its eCM to acquire downstream DSG tunnels. All other IP data is received via the home network by way of the SEB Server. The SEB Client is required to discard all packets received on the eCM, except DSG downstream tunnel requested by the Card and DSG Clients resident on the OCTCD.

The OCTCD SHALL remain operating as an SEB Client as long as it is able to communicate with the SEB Server, until such time as it loses communication with the SEB Server and is not able to discover another Server.

The OCTCD SHALL initiate DOCSIS registration if it is no longer able to communicate with an SEB Server.

The OCTCD SHALL terminate SEB Client functionality and disconnect from an SEB Server if the eCM re-establishes 2-way communication as a result of Tdsg3 retry.

6. The OCTCD forwards DSG packets requested by the Card across the Extended Channel interface via the DSG flow, if open. If the DSG flow is not open, the packets are to be dropped.
7. After locating a DOCSIS channel containing a DCD message, the OCTCD SHALL pass the initial received DCD message TLVs to the Card using the *send_DCD_info ()* APDU.
8. After the initial DCD message has been sent using the *send_DCD_info ()* APDU, the OCTCD SHALL only send the DCD message TLVs when it detects a change in the configuration count change field in the DCD message, detects an eCM MAC layer reinitialization, or after a change to the Primary Downstream Channel. The DCD message is defined in [DSG].
9. OCTCD-specific DSG tunnels will be designated in the *ADSG_Filter()* table contained in the *number_of_host_entries* field in the *DSG_directory()* APDU. The Card may send all of the entries defined in the DCD message to the OCTCD or may modify the list it sends.
10. In case of a shortage of network resources, the OCTCD SHALL give priority to the *ADSG_Filters* specified as Card entries in the *DSG_directory()* APDU.
11. If the default UCID = 0x00 is included with the *ADSG_Filter()* table as part of an entry in the *DSG_directory()* APDU, the OCTCD SHALL open this tunnel if the eCM UCID is not known or the host device is running in Advanced One-Way Mode. If the Host cannot find its UCID in the list of tunnels in the *DSG_directory*, the Host is expected to open the default tunnel. When UCID is used as a classifier in a DSG Rule, it is expected that a default rule, with a lower priority that does not use UCID as a classifier, will be present in the DCD message as defined in [DSG].

12. The OCTCD SHALL send a *DSG_message ()* APDU with a message type of eCM Reset whenever the eCM enters the "Continue scanning for DSG Channel" state as shown in Figure 5-4 of [DSG]. This ensures the DSG-CC on the Card will react to a *send_DCD_info ()* APDU generated by the OCTCD from the DCD of the new downstream, even if the Configuration Change Count (CCC) field happens to contain the same value as the Configuration Change Count (CCC) from the old downstream's DCD.

When operating as an SEB Client, the OCTCD SHALL send the *DSG_message()* APDU with message type of Dynamic Channel Change (Depart), including the applicable *init_type* value, whenever the state of the *DynamicChannelChange* variable of the SEB Server changes to a value of 0x00 thru 0x05.

The OCTCD SHALL send the *DSG_message()* APDU with the message type of 2-way OK, UCID, whenever the state of the *DynamicChannelChange* variable of the SEB Server changes to a value of 0xFF and it had previously sent a *DSG_message()* APDU indicating a Dynamic Channel Change as per above.

The following figure is an example of the initial message exchange between the Card and the OCTCD for Advanced Mode Operation:

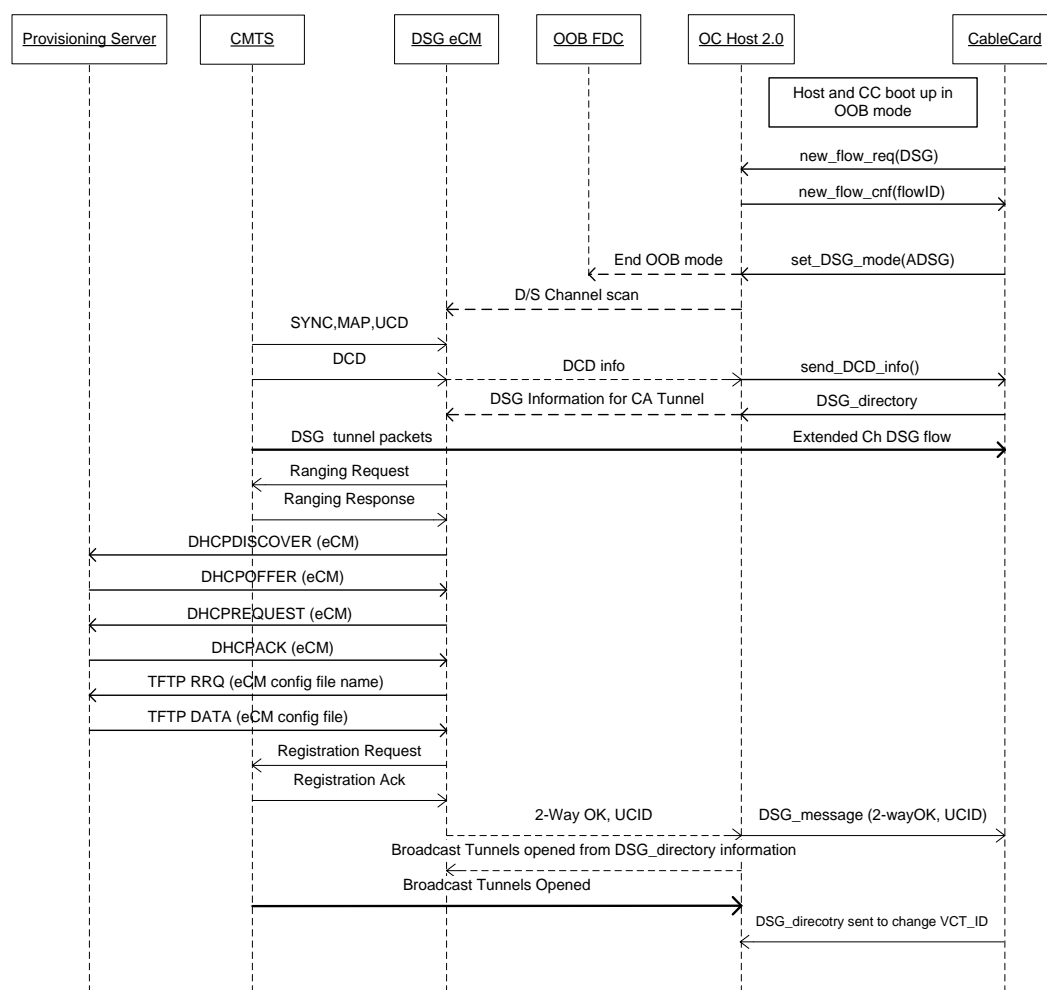


Figure 13.2-1 - Sample Advanced Mode Message Flow (Informative)

13.3 Broadcast Tunnels

The OpenCable use of the term "Broadcast Tunnel" describes a DSG Tunnel that is always connected and may be consumed directly by the OCTCD, if present. Currently there are three defined types of Broadcast Tunnels; SCTE 65, SCTE 18 and tunnels containing CVTs and/or OCAP XAITs. SCTE 65 Broadcast Tunnels contain data associated with the SCTE 65 specification for Service Information. SCTE 18 Broadcast Tunnels contain data associated with the SCTE 18 specification for Emergency Alert Messages. Other Broadcast Tunnels contain the OCAP XAIT messages that signal unbound applications and Common Download Code Version Tables that signal OCTCD code image upgrade. Each of these tunnel types carries a specific type(s) of industry-standard data and do not contain any other data types. The data in these tunnels are delivered as MPEG sections within a UDP packet and use the BT header as defined in [DSG]. These tunnels may be processed directly by the OCTCD.

Note: [DSG] defines a "Broadcast Client ID" type. The OpenCable "Broadcast Tunnels" are associated with specific DSG Broadcast Client ID values. [DSG] may also define additional Broadcast Client Ids which are not associated with OpenCable "Broadcast Tunnels".

13.4 Application tunnels

Application Tunnels are DSG tunnels that carry data flows intended for applications running on the OCTCD or carry operational code file images to upgrade the software of the OCTCD. Application Tunnels may contain DSMCC Object or Data Carousels or application specific data formats. If the Application Tunnel contains a Data Carousel (Common Download) or an Object Carousel (OCAP), the stream will use the DSG Carousel Header as part of the MPEG section/UDP structure as defined in [DSG].

One method for OCAP applications to request and receive application tunnels is described below.

1. The OCAP application registers with the OCTCD by providing its textual name (`source_name`) through the appropriate OCAP API.
2. Assuming that the OCTCD has already received the SCTE 65 Network Text Table (NTT) delivered directly over a DSG Broadcast tunnel or via the Extended Channel, the `source_name_subtable` (SNS) is parsed for all mappings between `source_name()` and `application_id`. Using the SNS, the OCTCD makes an association between the `textual_name` provided by the OCAP application and an `application_id`.
3. The DSGCC parses the DCD message for all DSG Rules and issues the *DSG_directory()* APDU. The OCTCD will parse the directory for desired `application_ids` for the DSG Classifier parameters (MAC address, Source/Dest IP address, TCP/UDP Port address). The OCTCD SHALL ignore any parameters passed in the *DSG_directory()* APDU associated with `application_ids` it does not recognize (i.e., these parameters are not forwarded to the eCM).
4. For `application_ids` that the OCTCD recognizes, the device forwards the addresses to the eCM, which begins filtering the desired DSG tunnel packets based on MAC address / DSG Classifier Parameters and passing these packets to the OCTCD.
5. The OCTCD forwards the DSG Application tunnel data to the OCAP application associated with the `application_id` of the DSG tunnel.

13.5 IP Unicast and Multicast Flows

This section describes the interaction between the OCTCD and Card when the OCTCD requires two-way IPv4 communication that utilizes an IP Unicast and/or IP Multicast flow that traverses the Card/Host Interface.

This section does not apply to Socket flows, to OCTCDs operating in IPv6 mode, or to OCTCDs operating in DSG mode.

An IP Unicast or IP Multicast flow is only supported when the device acting as the modem is provisioned with an IPv4 address. IP Unicast and IP Multicast flows are not supported when the modem device is provisioned with an IPv6 address. When IPv6 addressing is utilized, Extended Channel Socket Flows must be used.

The Extended Channel supports delivery of IPv4 packets across the Card interface for OCTCDs. Both unicast (point-to-point) and multicast (point-to-multipoint) addressing are supported by this protocol. If the OCTCD is in OOB mode, then the Card is the link device and services the IP flow via utilization of the OCTCD's RDC and, if able, supplies the OCTCD with an IPv4 address. On request of a *new_flow_req()* APDU from the OCTCD, the Card responds to the request to open the flow by obtaining an IPv4 address for use by the OCTCD. The IPv4 address is returned in the *new_flow_cnf()* APDU message.

Informative Note: The Card is not required to grant a request for service type IP Unicast when requested by the OCTCD.

When in QPSK mode (Card is the link modem) the Card transmits all unicast IPv4 packets received to the assigned OCTCD IPv4 address to the OCTCD when the OCTCD has successfully opened a unicast IP flow. The Card may drop packets when its buffers become full if the OCTCD is unable to absorb the packets as fast as they are being transmitted.

When in QPSK mode and the Card has opened an IP flow to the OCTCD, any IPv4 unicast data received from the OCTCD is transmitted to the network if physically possible.

When in QPSK mode, the Card may send broadcast IPv4 data to the OCTCD, and the Card may receive broadcast IPv4 packets from the OCTCD.

If the Card supports multicast and is in QPSK mode and has granted the OCTCD a multicast IP flow, all IPv4 data to the multicast IPv4 address is transmitted to the OCTCD. The Card may drop packets when its buffers become full if the OCTCD is unable to absorb the packets as fast as they are being transmitted.

When in QPSK mode, the Card is the network interface and modem. If the OCTCD requests an IPv4 address, the Card provides an IPv4 address based on the vendor's proprietary mechanisms. This may be accomplished with DHCP.

When the Card changes the mode from QPSK to DSG, if there is an IP flow open, the Card SHOULD send a *lost_flow_ind()* APDU with *reason_field* = 0x00 for the flow ID assigned to the OCTCD's IP_U flow. The OCTCD SHOULD respond with the *lost_flow_cnf()* APDU with *status_field* = 0x00. While it can be assumed that the flow is closed, the OCTCD SHOULD send a *delete_flow_req()* APDU to the Card to ensure that the flow is deleted. When a OCTCD receives a *lost_flow_ind()* APDU or sends a *delete_flow_req()* APDU for the IP_U flow, it SHOULD discard the previously assigned IP address.

13.6 Socket Flows

If the Card requires two-way communications in DSG mode and decides to open a Socket type connection, the Card can request a new flow using the *new_flow_req()* APDU with *service_type* = 0x04 (Socket).

The OCTCD SHALL create a socket of the type specified by the *protocol_flag* field in a *new_flow_req()* APDU sent by the Card with *service_type* = 0x04 (Socket).

The OCTCD SHALL bind the socket to the eSTB's IP address and the local port number specified by the *local_port_number* field in a *new_flow_req()* APDU sent by the Card with *service_type* = 0x04 (Socket).

If the Card has set the local port number field to 0 in a *new_flow_req()* APDU with *service_type* = 0x04 (Socket), the OCTCD SHALL choose an appropriate local port number for this flow.

Informative note: It is expected that applications on the OCTCD will not open ports that will be used by the Card.

If the remote address *type* = 0x00 (name) in a *new_flow_req()* APDU sent by the Card with *service_type* = 0x04 (Socket), the OCTCD SHALL use DNS to determine the remote host's IP address using the *name_byte* field.

When establishing a socket for TCP, the OCTCD SHALL connect the local socket to the socket on the remote host using the port number specified in *remote_port_number* specified in the *new_flow_req()* APDU.

Once the connection has been established to the remote host specified in a *new_flow_req()* APDU with *service_type* = 0x04 (Socket), the OCTCD SHALL respond to with the *new_flow_conf()* APDU.

If the OCTCD is unable to set up a requested socket flow, it SHALL respond to the Card with the *new_flow_conf()* APDU containing the appropriate error value in the status field.

If the Card requests a socket flow for TCP, the OCTCD SHALL attempt to establish a TCP connection for the number of seconds = *connection_timeout* as specified in the *new_flow_req()* APDU sent by the Card with *service_type* = 0x04 (Socket).

If the OCTCD cannot establish a TCP connection after *connection_timeout* number of seconds, it SHALL respond to the Card using the *new_flow_conf()* APDU with the *status_field* = 0x09 (Request Denied, could not establish TCP connection).

On receipt of data from the Card over the interface via the Socket Flow, the OCTCD SHALL use the socket that was opened for the flow to send the data to the destination Host using the eCM interface, except when operating as an SEB Client, in which case it forwards data to the home network interface.

When the socket has data ready to be read, the OCTCD SHALL read the data, strip off the Ethernet, IP, TCP and UDP headers, and forward the data to the Card. The data forwarded to the Card will be the exact data that is returned from the OCTCD's socket read operation.

The OCTCD SHALL NOT forward inbound UDP packets where the Source IP Address of the packet does not match the remote IP address specified when creating the Socket Flow.

The OCTCD MAY filter inbound UDP packets by discarding packets whose Source UDP port does not match the remote port specified when creating the Socket Flow.

The OCTCD SHALL forward inbound UDP packets that satisfy the following conditions: the packet's Source IP Address matches the remote IP address specified when the Socket Flow was created, the packet's Source UDP Port matches the remote port specified when the Socket Flow was created, and the packet's Destination UDP Port matches the local port specified when the Socket Flow was created.

When performing socket operations on behalf of the Card, the OCTCD SHALL NOT forward any data destined to the Card to any interface other than the CableCARD interface.

When performing socket operations on behalf of the Card, the OCTCD SHALL only forward to the Card data that has been received via the eCM interface, or via applications resident on the OCTCD, and which is destined to the Card, except when operating as an SEB Client, in which case it forwards data to the Card that had been received via the home network interface.

When performing socket operations on behalf of the Card, the OCTCD SHALL NOT forward any data received from the Card over the CableCard interface to any interface other than the eCM interface or the home network interface when operating as an SEB Client.

When an established socket flow is no longer needed by the Card, it will send the *delete_flow_req()* APDU, at which time the OCTCD SHALL close the socket.

When an established socket has been successfully closed as a result of receiving the *delete_flow_req()* APDU, the OCTCD SHALL send the *delete_flow_cnf()* APDU to the Card.

If the OCTCD detects that an established socket is no longer valid, it SHALL send the *lost_flow_ind()* APDU to the Card with a *reason_field* = 0x02 (network down or busy).

13.7 IP Address Acquisition

This section describes how the eSTB will acquire and renew its IP addresses.

After the eCM has completed the DOCSIS registration process and if eCM forwarding has not been restricted, it will notify the eSTB by issuing the "2-Way OK,UCID" message as defined in [DSG]. This message is forwarded to the DSG Client controller on the Card using the *DSG_message()* APDU, which indicates that the eCM has established two-way IP connectivity.

After the OCTCD has sent the *DSG_message()* APDU indicating "2-Way OK,UCID", it SHALL initiate the IP Address Acquisition process described in Figure 13.7-1 in order to acquire an IP address for the eSTB and any other parameters needed to establish IP connectivity.

If eCM forwarding is restricted and the eSTB has not been provisioned, then the OCTCD SHALL NOT perform any actions with regard to IP provisioning over the eCM interface. The OCTCD will send the *DSG_message()* APDU "eCM cannot forward 2-Way traffic" when forwarding restrictions are present. See [MULPIv3.0] for detailed information on DOCSIS provisioning that will result in forwarding restrictions.

The eSTB will determine the desired provisioning mode as described in Section 15.2.6. Based on the desired provisioning mode, the eSTB will attempt to acquire a global IPv4 address, IPv6 address, or both on the eSTB WAN-facing interface.

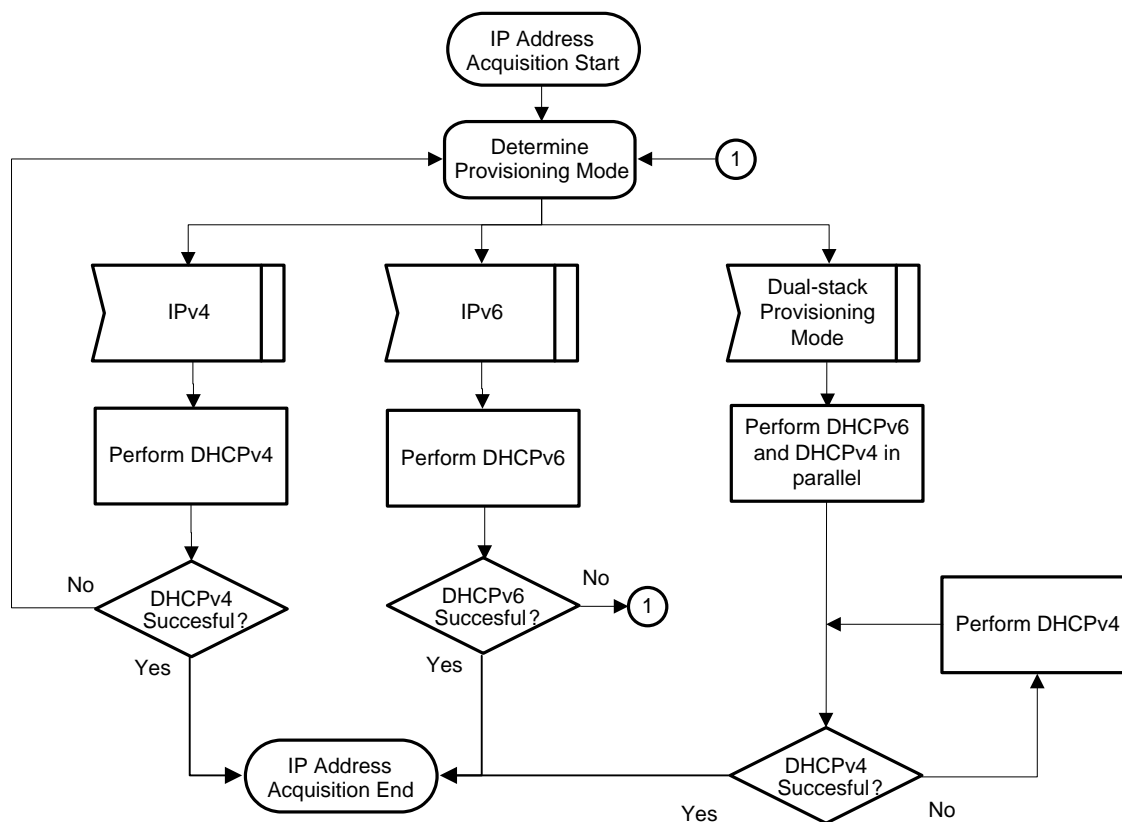


Figure 13.7-1 - Overview of IP Address Acquisition Process

The detailed requirements for each provisioning mode are specified in the remainder of this section.

An OCTCD that supports DSG SEB, as defined in [DSG], utilizes link-local IP address assignment as defined in [RFC 3927], to discover and initiate communications prior to acquiring an IP address via DHCP.

If an OCTCD supports SEB, fails DOCSIS registration, and has an active home network interface, then it SHALL provision itself with a link-local address as defined in [RFC 3927], prior to initiating any DHCP transactions.

If an OCTCD supports SEB, completes DOCSIS registration, and has an active home network interface, it SHALL provision itself with a link-local address as defined in [RFC 3927], to be utilized on the home network interface for SEB transactions.

When operating as an SEB Client, the OCTCD SHALL initiate all DHCP transactions over the home network interface.

When operating as an SEB Server, the OCTCD SHALL forward DHCP messages received on its home network interface, from a known SEB Client, to its eCM.

The OCTCD SHALL forward DHCP messages received on its eCM interface, destined for known SEB Clients, to its home network interface.

13.7.1 IPv4 Address Acquisition

This section describes how an OCTCD operating in IPv4 acquires and renews its IPv4 addresses.

13.7.1.1 eSTB IPv4 Address Acquisition

This section describes how the eSTB acquires an IP address through DHCP for its own use.

The OCTCD DHCP client behavior during all phases of operation, including initial IP address lease acquisition and lease renewal, SHALL be in accordance with the Client requirements of [RFC 2131] and the DHCP option requirements of [RFC 2132].

The following fields SHALL be present in the DHCPDISCOVER and DHCPREQUEST message from the OCTCD for the eSTB and set as described below.

The hardware type (htype) SHALL be set to 1 (Ethernet).

The hardware length (hlen) SHALL be set to 6.

The client hardware address (chaddr) SHALL be set to the 48-bit MAC address associated with the OCTCD.

The Client-identifier option (61) SHALL be included with the hardware type set to 1 and the value set to the same 48-bit MAC address as the chaddr field.

The "parameter request list" option (55) SHALL be included with the following option codes present in the list:

Option code 1 (Subnet Mask)

Option code 3 (Router Option)

Option code 6 (Domain Name Server)

Option code 15 (Domain Name)

Option code 23 (Default time to live)

Option code 51 (IP address lease time)

Option code 54 (Server Identifier)

To enable class identification, DHCP option 60 SHALL be included containing the character string "OpenCable2.1" using characters from the NVT ASCII character set with no terminating NULL.

DHCP option 43 and its sub-options 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10 and 54 SHALL be included. Details of DHCP option 43 and its sub-options for the eSTB are further defined below.

DHCP option 50, Requested IP Address, SHALL only be included in DHCPREQUEST messages.

The following requirements pertain to the option 43 sub-options in the DHCPDISCOVER and DHCPREQUEST messages from the eSTB.

DHCP option 43 in the eSTB is a compound option. The content of option 43 is composed of one or more sub-options. The option begins with a type octet with the value of number 43, followed by a length octet. The length octet is followed by the number of octets of data equal to the value of the length octet. The value of the length octet does not include the two octets specifying the tag and length. Each sub-option begins with a tag octet containing the sub-option code, followed by a length octet that indicates the total number of octets of data. The value of the length octet does not include itself or the tag octet. The length octet is followed by "length" octets of sub-option data. An example of the option 43 suboptions is given in Table 13.7-2.

The definitions of DHCP option 43 sub-options SHALL conform to requirements imposed by [RFC 2132].

An example implementation of the Vendor Specific Information Option (DHCP option 43) is shown in Table 13.7-2.

The OCTCD SHALL encode each of the DHCP option 43 sub-options 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, and 54 as a character string consisting of characters from the NVT ASCII character set with no terminating NULL.

The OCTCD MAY include Option 43 sub-option 1 in DHCPDISCOVER and DHCPREQUEST messages.

If DHCP option 43 sub-option 1 is included in DHCP client messages, the OCTCD SHALL encode this sub-option by the number of octets equal to the value of the length octet of this sub-option, with each octet codifying a requested sub-option.

If the length octet of sub-option 1 is 0 (because there are no requested sub-options), this sub-option SHOULD be omitted from DHCP option 43.

The OCTCD SHALL include DHCP option 43 sub-option 2 containing the character string "ESTB" (without the quotation marks).

The OCTCD SHALL include DHCP option 43 sub-option 3 containing a colon-separated list of all eSAFE types in the device, including at a minimum the colon-separated character string "ECM:ESTB" (without the quotation marks).

The OCTCD SHALL include DHCP option 43 sub-option 4 containing the device serial number.

The OCTCD SHALL include DHCP option 43 sub-option 5 containing the Hardware version number, identical to the value as reported in the <Hardware version> field in the MIB object sysDescr.

The OCTCD SHALL include DHCP option 43 sub-option 6 containing the Software version number, identical to the value as reported in the <Software version> field in the MIB object sysDescr.

The OCTCD SHALL include DHCP option 43 sub-option 7 containing the Boot ROM version number, identical to the value as reported in the <Boot ROM version> field in the MIB object sysDescr.

The OCTCD SHALL include DHCP option 43 sub-option 8 containing a 6-octet (6 NVT ASCII characters), hexadecimally-encoded, vendor-specific Organization Unique Identifier (OUI) that uniquely identifies the OCTCD manufacturer.

A vendor MAY use the same OUI as in the OCTCD's MAC address, and MAY use a single OUI to identify all its products.

The OCTCD SHALL include DHCP option 43 sub-option 9 containing the Model number, identical to the value as reported in the <Model number> field in the MIB object sysDescr.

The OCTCD SHALL include DHCP option 43 sub-option 10 containing the Vendor name, identical to the value as reported in the <Vendor name> field in the MIB object sysDescr.

The OCTCD SHALL include DHCP option 43 sub-option 54 containing the 40-bit HOST_ID, identical to the value in the Host X.509 certificate.

If the total number of octets in all DHCP option 43 sub-options exceeds 255 octets, the OCTCD SHALL follow [RFC 3396] to split the option into multiple smaller options.

An example of DHCP option 60 and the DHCP option 43 suboptions is given in Table 13.7-2.

The following requirements pertain to the DHCPACK message.

The OCTCD SHALL ignore any DHCP options delivered by the DHCP server in the DHCP message that the eSTB does not require or cannot interpret.

The OCTCD SHALL verify the existence of the following DHCP fields within the DHCP OFFER/DHCPACK message it receives from the DHCP server during initial IP address lease acquisition:

The IP address to be used by the eSTB (*yiaddr*)

The subnet mask to be used by the eSTB (Subnet Mask, Option 1)

A list of IP addresses of one or more routers to be used for forwarding eSTB-originated IP traffic (Router, Option 3); the eSTB is not required to use more than one router IP address for forwarding but SHALL use at least one.

The IP Address Lease Time (Lease Time, Option 51)

The Server Identifier of the DHCP server (Server Identifier, Option 54)

If any DHCP field required within the DHCP OFFER/DHCPACK message it receives from the DHCP server during initial IP address lease acquisition, other than *yiaddr* and appropriate Server Identifier values, are missing or is invalid in the DHCPACK message during a DHCP Renew or Rebind, the OCTCD, when operating as an SEB Client, SHALL ignore any invalid fields, preserve any field values from its initial IP address acquisition or a previous Renew or Rebind, and continue with normal operation. An example of an invalid field would be an option that is syntactically malformed (e.g., with an incorrect option length).

If any of the following DHCP fields is absent from the DHCPACK message, the OCTCD SHALL reject the offered lease and restart its DHCP IP address acquisition process from the INIT state as defined in [RFC 2131].

- *Yiaddr*
- Subnet Mask, Option 1
- Router, Option 3
- Lease time, Option 51
- Server Identifier, Option 54

The OCTCD SHALL disregard any TFTP Server Name (either option 66 or '*siaddr*' field of header) and Bootfile Name (either option 67 or '*file*' field of header) parameters defined in a DHCPACK/DHCP OFFER message and not download a configuration file using these parameters.

The OCTCD SHALL verify the existence of the following DHCP fields within the DHCPACK message it receives from the DHCP server during a DHCP Renew or Rebind.

- *Yiaddr*
- Subnet Mask, Option 1
- Router, Option 3
- Lease time, Option 51
- Server Identifier, Option 54

If the DHCPACK message does not contain the *yiaddr* field, the OCTCD SHALL restart its DHCP IP acquisition process from the INIT state as defined in [RFC 2131].

If any of the following DHCP fields is missing or is invalid in the DHCPACK message during a DHCP Renew or Rebind, the OCTCD SHALL ignore any invalid fields, preserve any field values from its initial IP address acquisition or a previous Renew or Rebind, and continue with normal operation.

- Subnet Mask, Option 1
- Router, Option 3
- Lease time, Option 51
- Server Identifier, Option 54

An example of an invalid field would be an option that is syntactically malformed (e.g., with an incorrect option length).

The eSTB SHOULD also implement a different retransmission strategy for the RENEWING and REBINDING states, as recommended in [RFC 2131], which is based on one-half of the remaining lease time.

The eSTB SHALL limit the number of retransmissions to five or fewer for the DHCPDISCOVER and DHCPREQUEST messages.

[RFC 3203] describes an extension to DHCPv4 that allows a DHCP server to send a FORCERENEW message that forces a client to renew its lease.

The eSTB SHALL ignore all received FORCERENEW messages.

The backoff values for retransmission of DHCPDISCOVER messages SHOULD be chosen according to a uniform distribution between the minimum and maximum values in the rows of Table 13.7-1.

Table 13.7-1 - DHCP Backoff Distribution Values

Backoff Number	Minimum (sec.)	Maximum (sec.)
1	3	5
2	7	9
3	15	17
4	31	33
5	63	65

Table 13.7-2 - Embedded OpenCable Host Thin Chassis Device DHCP Request

DHCP Request Options	Value	Description
CPE Option 60	"OpenCable2.1"	OpenCable Version
CPE Option 43 sub-option 1	"<null>"	The request sub-option vector is a list of sub-options (within option 43) to be returned to client by the server upon reply to the request. None defined.
CPE Option 43 sub-option 2	"ESTB"	Device type of the entity making the DHCP request.
CPE Option 43 sub-option 3	"ECM:ESTB"	List of eSAFEs.

DHCP Request Options	Value	Description
CPE Option 43 sub-option 4	"<device serial number>"	Serial Number of eSTB. If Serial Number is not available, then other unique identifier (other than MAC Address), such as HOST_ID, may be utilized
CPE Option 43 sub-option 5	"<hardware version number>"	Hardware version number of eSTB
CPE Option 43 sub-option 6	"<firmware version number>"	Firmware version number of eSTB
CPE Option 43 sub-option 7	"<boot ROM version number>"	Boot ROM version number of eSTB
CPE Option 43 sub-option 8	e.g., "0204DF"	A 6-octet, hexadecimal-encoded, vendor-specific Organization Unique Identifier (OUI) that may match the OUI in the eSTB's MAC address.
CPE Option 43 sub-option 9	e.g., "Xman200"	Vendor model number of eSTB
CPE Option 43 sub-option 10	e.g., "XYZ Broadband"	Vendor name
CPE Option 43 sub-option 54	e.g., "0A859B428"	40 bit HOST_ID as specified in Host X.509 certificate

13.7.1.2 IPv4 Address Lease Renewal

The OCTCD monitors the operational status of the eCM for changes in state, particularly a re-initialization of the eCM MAC layer, transition to One-Way operation, and changes in eCM forwarding restrictions.

If the OCTCD detects an eCM MAC layer re-initialization, or temporarily added and then removed eCM forwarding restrictions, it SHALL confirm the eSTB IP address lease by entering the INIT-REBOOT state for the lease as defined in [RFC 2131] after receiving the 2-Way OK indication from the eCM.

When operating as an SEB Client, if the OCTCD receives a UPnP ByeBye from the SEB Server and then reconnects with an SEB Server (either the same or different one), it SHALL confirm the eSTB IP address lease by entering the INIT-REBOOT state for the lease as defined in [RFC 2131].

In addition to the requirements above, all other aspects of eSTB address lease expiration SHALL be performed by the OCTCD according to [RFC 2131].

If the OCTCD detects that the eCM has transitioned from Two-Way operation to One-Way operation, it SHALL notify the Card via the *DSG_message()* APDU with message_type = 0x02 (Entering_one_way_mode).

When the eCM transitions back to Two-way mode, the OCTCD SHALL enter the INIT-REBOOT state as defined in [RFC 2131] for the eSTB's IP address.

When operating as an SEB Client, if the OCTCD detects that the SEB Server has left the network (e.g., UPnP ByeBye, the TCP connection to the SEB Tunnel is closed, etc.), is not able to complete DOCSIS registration and is not able to locate another SEB Server, it SHALL notify the Card via the *DSG_message()* APDU with message_type = 0x02 (Entering_one_way_mode).

When either DOCSIS registration completes or another SEB Server is discovered, the OCTCD SHALL enter the INIT-REBOOT state as defined in [RFC 2131] for the eSTB's IP address.

If the OCTCD detects that eCM forwarding has been restricted, it SHALL notify the Card via the *DSG_message()* APDU with message_type = 0x07 (2-Way OK, but forwarding restricted).

When operating as an SEB Server, if the OCTCD has eCM forwarding restricted, the OCTCD SHALL terminate SEB Server operation and notify the devices on the network via a UPnP ByeBye, as defined in [DSG].

If the OCTCD detects that eCM forwarding restrictions have been removed, it SHALL notify the Card via the *DSG_message()* APDU with *message_type* = 0x01 (2-Way OK, UCID).

When operating as an SEB Server, if the OCTCD detects that eCM forwarding restrictions have been removed, it SHALL attempt to re-establish itself as an SEB Server as defined in [DSG].

13.7.2 IPv6 Address Acquisition

This section describes how the OCTCD operating in IPv6 mode will acquire and renew its IPv6 address.

13.7.2.1 eSTB IPv6 Address Acquisition

This section describes how the eSTB is provisioned with an IPv6 address and associated configuration parameters. The requirements in this section apply only to eSTBs that have been instructed to operate in IPv6 mode.

The eSTB's IPv6 address acquisition process includes the assignment of a link-local address, an IPv6 address, and other IPv6 configuration parameters. These steps are described in the following sub-sections.

13.7.2.1.1 Obtain Link-Local Address

The OCTCD SHALL construct a link-local address for its eSTB according to the procedure in section 5.3 of [RFC 4862].

The OCTCD SHALL use the Modified EUI-64 identifier based on its 48-bit MAC address for its eSTB's management interface as described in [RFC 4291].

After constructing the link-local address, the OCTCD SHALL use Duplicate Address Detection (DAD), as described in section 5.4 of [RFC 4862], to confirm that the constructed link-local address is not already in use.

If the OCTCD determines that the constructed link-local address is already in use, the OCTCD SHALL consider that IPv6 address acquisition has failed and follow the procedures in section 5.4.5 of [RFC 4862].

There are security implications if services on the OCTCD are accessible via the Link-Local IPv6 address, as the CMTS may not have the ability to selectively block Link-Local IPv6 traffic that is initiated from the premises of other subscribers.

The Link-Local IPv6 address is only used for IPv6 provisioning traffic to and from the CMTS during acquisition of the routable IPv6 address, and as such the operator will not need to send or receive any application traffic to the OCTCD using its Link-Local IPv6 address. Therefore, this specification restricts the OCTCD to not accept or transmit any IPv6 traffic using its Link-Local IPv6 address for any application other than IPv6 provisioning, Neighbor Discovery and MLDv1/MLDv2.

When the OCTCD has been provisioned using IPv6, it SHALL NOT bind any services or applications to its Link-Local IPv6 address except those that support provisioning of the IPv6 stack, such as DHCPv6.

13.7.2.1.2 Obtain Default Routers

The OCTCD's eSTB SHALL perform router discovery as specified in [RFC 4861]. The eSTB identifies neighboring routers and default routers from the received Router Advertisements (RAs).

13.7.2.1.3 IPv6 Address and Other Configuration Parameters

The OCTCD SHALL use DHCPv6 [RFC 3315] to acquire an IPv6 address and configuration information for its eSTB.

The OCTCD SHALL support the Reconfigure Key Authentication Protocol as described in [RFC 3315].

The eSTB sends Solicit and Request messages, as described in sections 17.1.1 and 18.1.1, respectively, of [RFC 3315]. The Solicit and Request messages SHALL include the following:

A Client Identifier option (OPTION_CLIENT_ID) containing the DUID for this eSTB. The DUID SHALL be based on the eSTB's link layer address as described in section 9.4 of [RFC 3315].

An IA_NA option (OPTION_IA_NA) to obtain its IPv6 address.

A Reconfigure Accept option (OPTION_RECONF_ACCEPT) to indicate the eSTB is willing to accept Reconfigure messages.

An Options Request option (OPTION_ORO) requesting the following options:

Domain list option (OPTION_DOMAIN_LIST) as defined in [RFC 3646]

DNS Recursive Name Server (OPTION_DNS_SERVERS) as defined in [RFC 3646]

A Vendor Class option (OPTION_VENDOR_CLASS) containing 32-bit number 4491 (the Cable Television Laboratories, Inc. enterprise number) and the string "OpenCable2.1".

A Vendor Specific Information option (OPTION_VENDOR_OPTS) as defined in section 22.17 of [RFC 3315] containing the options in the following table. The enterprise-number field must be set to CableLabs' enterprise number: 4491. The option codes come from [CANN-DHCP].

Table 13.7-3 - Vendor Specific Information Options

Option code	Value	Description
2	"ESTB"	Device Type(CL_OPTION_DEVICE_TYPE)
3	"ECM:ESTB"	"ECM:ESTB" = An Embedded STB(CL_OPTION_EMBEDDED_COMPONENTS_LIST)
4	"<device serial number>"	Device serial number e.g., "123456" (CL_OPTION_DEVICE_SERIAL_NUMBER)
5	"<Hardware version>"	Hardware version number. Identical to value as reported in the <Hardware version> field in the MIB object sysDescr. e.g., "v.3.2.1"(CL_OPTION_HARDWARE_VERSION_NUMBER)
6	"<Software version>"	Software version number. Identical to value as reported in the <Software version> field in the MIB object sysDescr. e.g., "v.1.0.2"(CL_OPTION_SOFTWARE_VERSION_NUMBER)
7	"<Boot ROM version>"	Boot ROM version. Identical to value as reported in the <Boot ROM version> field in the MIB object sysDescr. e.g., "Bv4.5.6"(CL_OPTION_BOOT_ROM_VERSION)
8	"<OUI>"	A 6-octet, hexadecimal-encoded, vendor-specific Organization Unique Identifier (OUI) that may match the OUI in the eCM's MAC address.(CL_OPTION_VENDOR_OUI)
9	"<Model number>"	Device model number. Identical to value as reported in the <Model number> field in MIB object sysDescr. e.g., "T3000"(CL_OPTION_MODEL_NUMBER)
10	"<Vendor name>"	Vendor name or ID. Identical to value as reported in the <Vendor name> field in the MIB object sysDescr. e.g., "XYZ Corp"(CL_OPTION_VENDOR_NAME)
36	"<MAC Address>"	MAC Address(CL_OPTION_DEVICE_ID)

A Rapid Commit option (OPTION_RAPID_COMMIT) indicating that the eSTB is willing to perform a 2-message DHCPv6 message exchange with the server.

The eSTB SHALL use the following values for retransmission of the Solicit message (see section 14 of [RFC 3315] for details):

IRT (Initial Retransmission Time) = SOL_TIMEOUT

MRT (Maximum Retransmission Time) = SOL_MAX_RT

MRC (Maximum Retransmission Count) = 4

MRD (Maximum Retransmission Duration) = 0

If the MRC value is exceeded before the eSTB receives a Reply from a DHCP server, the OCTCD SHALL consider IPv6 provisioning to have failed.

The DHCPv6 server may be configured to use a 2 message Rapid Commit sequence. The DHCP server and eSTB follow [RFC 3315] in the optional use of the Rapid Commit message exchange.

The DHCP server responds to Solicit messages and Request messages with Advertise and Reply messages (depending on the use of Rapid Commit). The Advertise and Reply messages may include other configuration parameters, as requested by the eSTB, or as configured by the administrator to be sent to the eSTB.

13.7.3 IPv6 Address Lease Renewal

The OCTCD monitors the operational status of the eCM for changes in state, particularly a re-initialization of the eCM MAC layer, transition to One-Way operation, and changes in eCM forwarding restrictions.

If the OCTCD detects an eCM MAC layer re-initialization, temporarily added and then removed eCM forwarding restrictions or transition from one-way to two-way state, it SHALL confirm the eSTB IPv6 address lease by sending a Confirm message as defined in [RFC 2131] after receiving the 2_Way OK indication from the eCM.

The OCTCD SHALL NOT use its eSTB IPv6 address until it receives a Response message from the DHCP server confirming its address.

If the OCTCD does not receive a response to the Confirm message before the message transmission process terminates, the OCTCD SHALL restart its DHCP process by sending a Solicit message.

All other aspects of IPv6 address lease expiration SHALL be performed by the OCTCD according to [RFC 2131].

When operating as SEB Client, if the OCTCD detects a loss of and then reacquisition of an SEB Server, it SHALL confirm the eSTB IPv6 address lease by sending a Confirm message as defined in [RFC 2131] after receiving the IP address mode, with a value of IPv6, from the DSG SEB Server.

13.7.4 Dual-stack Provisioning Mode (DPM)

The requirements in this sub-section only apply to the WAN-facing interface (ifIndex 1).

In Dual-stack Provisioning Mode (DPM), the eSTB attempts to acquire both IPv6 and IPv4 addresses and parameters through DHCPv6 and DHCPv4 [RFC 2131], [RFC 3315].

When the eSTB is configured for DPM, its DHCPv4 and DHCPv6 clients operate independently. For example, the lease times for the IPv4 and IPv6 addresses may be different, and the DHCP clients need not attempt to extend the leases on the IP addresses simultaneously.

If the eSTB is directed through TLV (Type 1) to operate in DPM, it SHALL perform IPv6 network connectivity as specified in Section 13.7.2.

The eSTB SHALL also perform IPv4 network connectivity as specified in Section 13.7.1.

The IPv4 and IPv6 address acquisition processes SHALL start no more than 5 seconds apart.

If provisioning of any one address family fails, the eSTB SHALL maintain operation as long as the acquisition of at least one address family is successful.

It is desirable for the eSTB to notify the DHCP server before an SNMP-initiated reset or other type of reset. Under these circumstances, the eSTB will release the IPv4 address, IPv6 address, or both depending on the current IP provisioning mode TLV (Type 1).

An eSTB with an unexpired IPv4 address SHALL send a DHCPRELEASE message as described in [RFC 2131] immediately prior to acting upon any reset event.

An eSTB with an unexpired IPv6 address SHALL send a RELEASE message as described in [RFC 3315] immediately prior to acting upon any reset event.

Note: A reset event is caused by a write to the ocStbHostRebootReset MIB object, the Host Reset Vector, or thru an OCAP API.

14 MANAGEMENT REQUIREMENTS

This section details the OpenCable Host Thin Chassis device management requirements for SNMP in alignment with section 5.2 of [eDOCSIS]. The Management requirements in this section are divided into three parts: SNMP Protocol requirements covered in Section 14.1, MIB requirements in Section 14.2 (additional details covered in Annex A of [HOST-MIB]), and SNMP Access Control Configuration covered in section 14.4. The OCTCD SNMP Management requirements are primarily defined for diagnostic and status report of the OCTCD core functions and features (Section 3.1.2); therefore, SNMP write access is not commonly specified. In the case of SNMP MIB objects with write access being specified, those definitions should not overlap configuration functions that might be present in other interfaces such as [OCAP].

The configuration of the OCTCD via SNMP is limited to the write access capabilities included in the MIB requirements of this section and [HOST-MIB]. It means that the configuration and provisioning of certain read-only MIB objects are performed by mechanisms such as Out-Of-Band signaling (Section 5.2.2), outside of the scope of this specification. In particular, the configuration of the OCTCD SNMP Access Control mechanisms that provide SNMP access to SNMP entities in the role of managers is defined in Section 14.4 of this specification.

14.1 SNMP Protocol requirements

The OCTCD MAY implement the SNMPv3 protocol framework as defined in STD 62 [RFC 3411] through [RFC 3415].

The OCTCD SHALL implement either SNMPv1/v2c Coexistence as defined in [RFC 3584], or SNMPv2 Community-based Access as defined in [RFC 1901].

14.2 Requirements for SNMP MIB Modules

The OCTCD SHALL support a minimum of 10 entries for each individual SNMP conceptual table defined in this specification, unless otherwise specified. For example, the mapping of a required number of provisioning parameters may translate to a different number of entries of an SNMP conceptual table, a requirement to map a complete set of MPEG descriptors into SNMP conceptual tables, etc.

When operating as an SEB Client, the OCTCD SHALL only support the MIB objects applicable for the eSTB as defined in Section 14, with the following exceptions:

The OCTCD SHALL respond to SNMP GET and SET messages addressed to the eSTB that are targeted to the DSG MIB [DSG].

14.2.1 Requirements for OC-STB-HOST-MIB MIB Module

This section describes the OCTCD management requirements related to the OCTCD Core Functional Requirements detailed in Section 3.1.2.

The OCTCD SHALL implement the MIB objects of OC-STB-HOST-MIB as described in Annex A of [HOST-MIB].

14.3 Additional MIB requirements for OCTCD

This section describes the OCTCD management requirements not related to the OCTCD Core Functional Requirements (Section 3.1.2). These requirements include standard IETF networking, interfaces and device

parameters, as well as DOCSIS modeled requirements based on [OSSIV2.0] for DOCSIS 2.0 implementations or [OSSIV3.0] for DOCSIS 3.0 implementations, and [eDOCSIS] specifications.

14.3.1 Requirements for SNMPv2-MIB [RFC 3418]

The OCTCD SHALL implement the MIB objects of system group in [RFC 3418].

The OCTCD SHALL report the hardware version, Boot ROM image version, vendor name, software version, and model number in the sysDescr object (from [RFC 3418]) as described in Table 14.3-1.

The OCTCD SHALL report each type-value pair in Table 14.3-1 separated with a colon and blank space. Each pair is separated by a ";" followed by a blank space. For instance, a sysDescr of an OCTCD of vendor X, hardware version 5.2, Boot ROM version 1.4, SW version 2.2, and model number X will be as follows:

any text<<HW_REV: 5.2; VENDOR: X; BOOTR: 1.4; SW_REV 2.2; MODEL: X>>any text

Table 14.3-1 - [RFC 3418] sysDescr Format

To report	Format of each field
Hardware Version	HW_REV: <Hardware version>
Vendor Name	VENDOR: <Vendor name>
Boot ROM	BOOTR: <Boot ROM Version>
Software Version	SW_REV: <Software version>
Model Number	MODEL: <Model number>

14.3.2 Requirements for IF-MIB [RFC 2863]

The OCTCD SHALL implement the MIB objects of ifGeneralInformationGroup from [RFC 2863] as described in Table 14.3-2 and Annex A of [HOST-MIB].

The OCTCD MAY implement the MIB objects of ifPacketGroup, ifHCPacketGroup or ifVHCPacketGroup and ifCounterDiscontinuityGroup from [RFC 2863] for interfaces with IANA defined ifType as described in Annex A of [HOST-MIB] and Table 14.3-2.

If implemented, the OCTCD SHALL have ifLinkUpDownTrapEnable set by default to 'false' for output interfaces with defined IANA ifType as well as any interface facing the eCM or the HFC network unless defined for this specification.

Table 14.3-2 - [RFC 2863] ifTable, MIB-Object Details for OCTCD Interfaces

MIB Object	OCTCD	Card
ifIndex	1	2
ifDescr: MUST match the text	"OCTCD Embedded IP 2-way Interface"	"CableCARD Unicast IP Flow"
ifType	Other(1)	Other(1)
ifMtu	0	0
ifSpeed	0	0

MIB Object	OCTCD	Card
ifPhysAddress	OCTCD MAC Address	If the IP_U flow does not exist, then this object should contain an octet string of zero length. Otherwise, this object should contain the Card's MAC address.
ifAdminStatus:	up(1)	up(1), down(2)*
ifOperStatus:	up(1), down(2)	up(1), down(2), notPresent(6)**
ifLastChange	<per RFC2863>	<per RFC2863>
ifInOctets	(n)	(n)
ifInUCastPkts	(n)	(n)
ifInDiscards	(0)	(0)
ifInErrors	(0)	(0)
ifUnknownProtos	(0)	(0)
ifOutOctets	(n)	(n)
ifOutUCastPkts	(n)	(n)
ifOutDiscards	(0)	(0)
ifOutErrors	(0)	(0)

NOTES:

The SNMP management interface only requires to report the value 'up' for ifAdminStatus in the two-way interface. Other management interfaces may support the reporting of other values.

ifIndex 1 above is the eSTB interface connected to the eCM's interface ifIndex 17 [eDOCSIS]. Packets leaving eCM interface 17 arrive at eSTB interface 1 and vice versa.

ifIndex 1 above is the eSTB interface of an SEB Client connected to the SEB Server's eCM interface ifIndex 17 [eDOCSIS] via proxy of the home network interface. Packets leaving the SEB Server's eCM interface 17 arrive at SEB Client's eSTB interface 1 and vice versa.

ifIndex 2 above is the Card interface connected to the eCM's interface ifIndex 17 [eDOCSIS]. Packets leaving eCM interface 17 arrive at eSTB interface 2 and vice versa. ifIndex 2 is only applicable when the Card has opened a Unicast IP Flow.

ifIndex 2 above is the Card's interface of an SEB Client connected to the SEB Server's eCM interface ifIndex 17 [eDOCSIS] via proxy of the home network interface. Packets leaving the SEB Server's eCM interface 17 arrive at SEB Client's Card interface 2 and vice versa. ifIndex 2 is only applicable when the Card has opened a Unicast IP Flow.

* If the Card has opened a Unicast IP Flow, the OCTCD SHALL set the value of ifAdminStatus for ifIndex 2 to up(1); else down(2).

** If the Card has opened a Socket Flow, the OCTCD SHALL set the value of ifOperStatus for ifIndex 2 to notPresent(6).

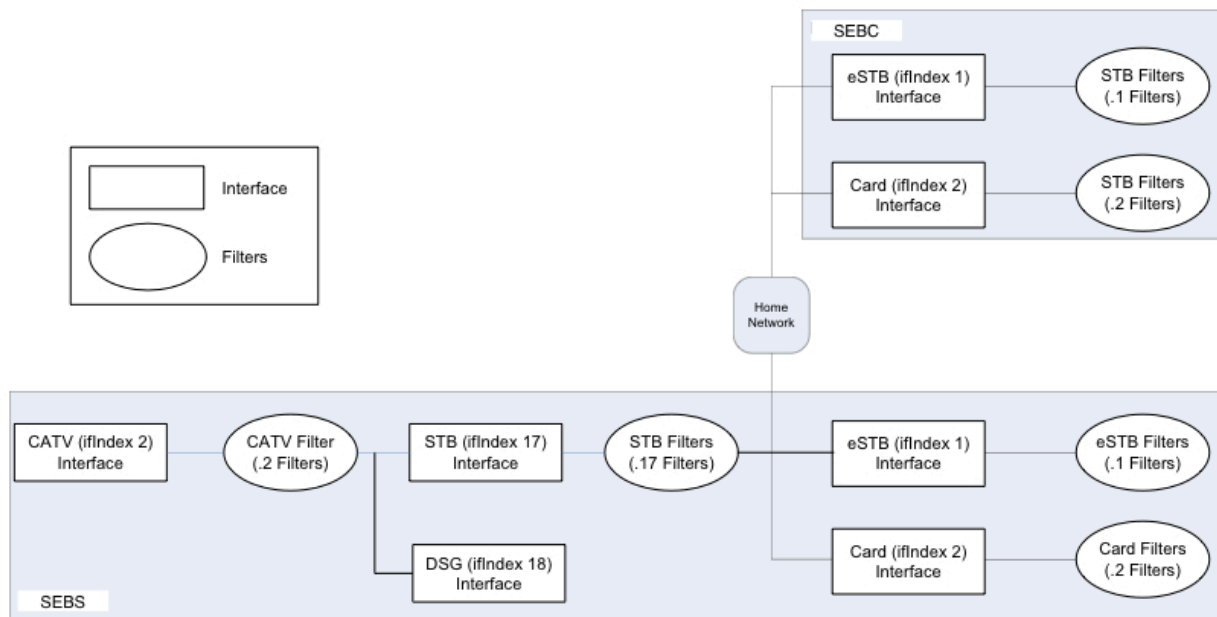


Figure 14.3-1 - SEB Interface Implementation (Informative)

14.3.3 Requirements for IP-MIB [RFC 4293]

The OCTCD MAY implement the MIB objects of ipNetToPhysicalGroup from [RFC 4293] to indicate the IP addresses associated to the two-way IP OCTCD interface as defined in Annex A of [HOST-MIB] and Table 14.3-3.

The OCTCD SHALL implement the IP and ICMP objects and statistics according to the [eDOCSIS] requirements.

Table 14.3-3 - [RFC 4293] ipNetToPhysicalTable, MIB-Object Details for OCTCD Interfaces

MIB Object	OCTCD IP two-way interface	
ipNetToPhysicalIfIndex	ifIndex = 1	
ipNetToPhysicalNetAddressType	ipv4, ipv6	
ipNetToPhysicalNetAddress	IPv4 or IPv6 Address, if acquired; otherwise 0.0.0.0	
ipNetToPhysicalPhysAddress	STB Host MAC Address	
ipNetToPhysicalLastUpdated	sysUptime value from last update	
ipNetToPhysicalType	local(5)	
ipNetToPhysicalState	For IPv4: unknown(6)	
ipNetToPhysicalRowStatus	active(1)	

The OCTCD SHALL implement the MIB table ipAddressTable defined in [RFC 4293] to report all IP addresses associated with the two-way IP OCTCD interface as defined in Annex A of [HOST-MIB] using the ifIndex values defined in Table 14.3-3.

14.3.4 Requirements for DOCS-CABLE-DEVICE-MIB MIB Module

The OCTCD SHALL implement a subset of MIB objects from DOCS-CABLE-DEVICE-MIB [RFC 2669] as described in Annex A of [HOST-MIB].

The OCTCD is required to support the log event model for [OSSIV2.0] defined in [RFC 2669]. This event model consists of a eight Event levels (or priorities) to categorize events by their relevance.

The event levels from high to low priority are: Emergency (priority 1), Alert (priority 2), Critical (priority 3), Error (priority 4), Warning (priority 5), Notice (priority 6), Informational (priority 7), Debug (priority 8).

The control of the logging activities is performed by three modules:

- Local log: A local storage of events in two formats, volatile and a non-volatile. The volatile log clears the entries after the OCTCD reinitializes. The non-volatile log persists its entries after OCTCD reinitialization.
- Event Priority Dispatch: Based on the Event level, the events are sent to combinations of volatile log, non-volatile-log and event collector systems. [RFC 2669] defines the syslog and SNMP notification receivers as collector systems.
- Throttling mechanism: In order to reduce logging activity of events sent to collectors, [RFC 2669] provides mechanisms for controlling the number of events sent to collector systems.

This specification only requires support of local log in volatile and non-volatile formats, as well as the selection of the types of events levels to be logged locally. As an example, an MSO may decide to log only 'Error' and higher event level priorities.

The OCTCD at initialization logs events with priorities 1..6, using the factory default settings as described in the requirements below. After completion of provisioning, the OCTCD could be provisioned to log another set of event priorities.

The OCTCD SHALL support the Event list defined in Annex A and log those events in the SNMP MIB Table docsDevEventTable (see Annex A of [HOST-MIB]).

The OCTCD SHALL support the SNMP MIB object docsDevEvControl from [RFC 2669].

The OCTCD SHALL support the SNMP MIB docsDevEvControlTable from [RFC 2669] to determine the event priority of events to be logged in volatile and non-volatile format.

The OCTCD SHALL support the SNMP MIB docsDevEventTable from [RFC 2669] to report logged in volatile and non-volatile events.

The OCTCD SHALL support only BITS 0 and 3 of the SNMP MIB object docsDevEvReporting, and ignore other BITS.

Note: The permissible BIT values for the docsDevEvReporting object [RFC 2669] have been superseded by [OSSIV2.0] as follows:

- local-nonvolatile(0)
- traps(1)
- syslog(2)
- local-volatile(3)

Unless otherwise configured as a factory default, the OCTCD SHALL log in the non-volatile local-log events with priority 'Emergency', 'Alert', 'Critical' and 'Error'.

Unless otherwise configured as a factory default, the OCTCD SHALL log in the volatile local-log events with levels, Warning event (priority 5), Notice event (priority 6).

14.3.5 Requirements for HOST-RESOURCES-MIB [RFC 2790]

The OCTCD SHALL implement a subset of MIB objects from HOST-RESOURCES-MIB as defined in Annex A of [HOST-MIB].

14.4 SNMP Access Control Configuration Requirements

The OCTCD configures the SNMP Access Control for SNMP entities acting in role of 'managers' by supporting the SNMP Access Control TLVs defined in Section 15.2. The following section indicates the applicability of the SNMP Access Control TLVs for the cases where the OCTCD supports SNMP community-based [RFC 1901] or SNMPv1 and SNMP v2c as specified in [RFC 3584].

This specification refers to "SNMPv1/v2c Coexistence" as the support of SNMPv1 or SNMPv2c messages exchange between the OCTCD and other SNMP entities where the OCTCD implements the SNMPv3 framework ([RFC 3411] through [RFC 3415]). For that purpose, [RFC 3584] defines special mappings of SNMP community names to SNMP security names to make use of the access control mechanism defined in [RFC 3415].

The OCTCD SHALL ignore any SNMP request in the absence of SNMP Access Control configuration TLVs received during the OCTCD provisioning process defined in Section 15.1.

14.4.1 SNMP Access Control Configuration for SNMP Community-based Access [RFC 1901]

If the OCTCD supports SNMP community-based access, it SHALL NOT instantiate any proprietary MIB to report the configuration of the SNMP Access Control TLVs.

The OCTCD SHALL NOT report such configuration under the OID sub-tree snmpV2.

The SNMP Access Control TLVs defined in section 15.2 are based on the SNMPv3 framework [RFC 3411]. However, in case the OCTCD supports SNMP community-based access [RFC 1901], the requirements below define the corresponding mapping.

If the OCTCD supports SNMP community-based access, it SHALL ignore the SNMPv3 Access View Configuration TLV.

If the OCTCD supports SNMP community-based access, it SHALL implement Table 14.4-1, which defines the mapping of SNMPv1v2c Coexistence Configuration TLV elements to SNMP community-based parameters.

Table 14.4-1 - SNMP Community Based Configuration TLV Mapping

Sub-TLVs	Variable Name	Associated RFC term
SNMPv1v2c Community Name	<i>CommunityName</i>	SNMP community string [RFC 1901]
SNMPv1v2c Transport Address Access:		
SNMPv1v2c Transport Address	<i>TAddress</i>	IP Address bits- ignore TAddress UDP port information. See [RFC 3413]
SNMPv1v2c Transport Address Mask	<i>TMask</i>	IPAddress Mask bits - ignore TMask UDP port information. See [RFC 3584]
SNMPv1v2c Access View Type	<i>AccessViewType</i>	If absent indicates read-only access, <i>AccessViewType</i> = '1' indicates read-only access. <i>AccessViewType</i> = '2' indicates read-write access
SNMPv1v2c Access View Name	<i>AccessViewName</i>	Ignore this sub-TLV

14.4.2 SNMP Access Control Configuration for SNMPv1v2c Coexistence Mode [RFC 3584]

If the OCTCD supports SNMPv1v2c Coexistence, it SHALL by default add an exclusion rule for access to objects under the OID `snmpV2`.

The OCTCD SHALL provide access to objects under the OID sub-tree `snmpV2` in the case the SNMP Configuration TLV 'SNMP Access View Subtree' explicitly includes access to objects under the OID sub-tree `snmpV2`.

14.4.2.1 SNMPv1v2c Coexistence Configuration TLV

This section specifies the mapping of the SNMPv1v2c Coexistence Configuration TLV (see section 15.2) to SNMPv3 MIB objects. The SNMPv1v2c Coexistence Configuration TLV is used to configure SNMPv3 tables for SNMPv1 and v2c access.

If the OCTCD supports SNMPv1v2c Coexistence, it SHALL create entries in the following tables in order to cause the desired SNMP Access: `snmpCommunityTable`, `snmpTargetAddrTable`, `vacmSecurityToGroupTable`, and `vacmAccessTable`, as described in Table 14.4-2.

Table 14.4-2 - SNMPv1v2c Coexistence Configuration TLV Mapping

Sub-TLVs	Variable Name	Associated MIB Object
SNMPv1v2c Community Name	<i>CommunityName</i>	<code>snmpCommunityTable</code> [RFC 3584]
SNMPv1v2c Transport Address Access:		
SNMPv1v2c Transport Address	<i>TAddress</i>	<code>snmpTargetAddrTAddress</code> [RFC 3413]
SNMPv1v2c Transport Address Mask	<i>TMask</i>	<code>snmpTargetAddrTMask</code> [RFC 3584]

Sub-TLVs	Variable Name	Associated MIB Object
SNMPv1v2c Access View Type	<i>AccessViewType</i>	
SNMPv1v2c Access View Name	<i>AccessViewName</i>	Based on value of <i>AccessViewType</i> : vacmAccessReadViewName, vacmAccessWriteViewName [RFC 3415]

The OCTCD is not required to verify the consistency of linkage of tables unless specified in the correspondent RFC's MIB objects the eSTB TLVs are configuring. It is intended that the SNMP agent will handle the corresponding configuration problems as part of the normal SNMP incoming requests (e.g., generating internal abstract data elements like noSuchView [RFC 3415]).

Table 14.4-4 through Table 14.4-9 describe the OCTCD procedures to populate the SNMP Management Framework Message Processing and Access Control Subsystems [RFC 3412].

In configuring entries in these SNMPv3 tables, note the following:

The ReadViewName and WriteViewName may correspond to default entries as defined (if any), or entries created using SNMPv3 Access View Configuration (see Section 15.2).

14.4.2.1.1 *snmpCommunityTable*

The *snmpCommunityTable* is defined in the "SNMP Community MIB Module" section of [RFC 3584].

If the OCTCD supports SNMPv1v2c Coexistence, it SHALL create one row in *snmpCommunityTable* for each SNMPv1v2c Coexistence Configuration TLV as indicated in Table 14.4-3.

The OCTCD SHALL set in *snmpCommunityIndex* the keyword @STBconfig_n where 'n' is a sequential number starting at 0 for each TLV processed (e.g., "@STBconfig_0", "@STBconfig_1", etc.).

Table 14.4-3 - *snmpCommunityTable*

Column Name (* = Part of Index)	Column Value
* <i>snmpCommunityIndex</i>	"@STBconfig_n" where n is 0..m-1 and m is the number of SNMPv1v2c Community Name sub-TLVs
<i>snmpCommunityName</i>	<CommunityName>
<i>snmpCommunitySecurityName</i>	"@STBconfig_n"
<i>snmpCommunityContextEngineID</i>	<the Engine ID of the OCTCD associated SNMP Entity>
<i>snmpCommunityContextName</i>	<Zero-length OCTET STRING> or vendor specific
<i>snmpCommunityTransportTag</i>	"@STBconfigTag_n" where n is 0..m-1 and m is the number of SNMPv1v2c Coexistence Configuration TLVs
<i>snmpCommunityStorageType</i>	volatile (2)
<i>snmpCommunityStatus</i>	active (1)

14.4.2.1.2 *snmpTargetAddrTable*

For *snmpTargetAddrTable*, see "Definitions" section of [RFC 3413].

If the OCTCD supports SNMPv1v2c Coexistence, it SHALL create one row in snmpTargetAddrTable for each SNMPv1v2c Transport Address Access sub-TLV of the SNMPv1v2c Coexistence Configuration TLV as indicated in Table 14.4-4.

Table 14.4-4 - snmpTargetAddrTable

Column Name (* = Part of Index)	Column Value
* snmpTargetAddrName	"@STBconfigTag_n_i" where n is 0..m-1 and m is the number of SNMPv1v2c Coexistence Configuration TLVs. i is 0..p-1 and p is the number of SNMPv1v2c Transport Address Access sub-TLV within the SNMPv1v2c Coexistence Configuration TLV n
snmpTargetAddrTDomain	IPv4: snmpUDPDDomain [RFC 3417] IPv6: transportDomainUdpIpv6 [RFC 3419]
snmpTargetAddrTAddress (IP Address and UDP Port)	IPv4: SnmpUDPAddress [RFC 3417] OCTET STRING (6) Octets 1-4: <TAddress> Octets 5-6: <TAddress> IPv6: TransportAddressIPv6 [RFC 3419] OCTET STRING (18) Octets 1-16: <TAddress> Octets 17-18: <TAddress>
snmpTargetAddrTimeout	Default from MIB
snmpTargetAddrRetryCount	Default from MIB
snmpTargetAddrTagList	"@STBconfigTag_n" where n is 0..m-1 and m is the number of SNMPv1v2c Coexistence Configuration TLVs.
snmpTargetAddrParams	<null character '00'h> - not used-
snmpTargetAddrStorageType	volatile (2)
snmpTargetAddrRowStatus	active (1)

14.4.2.1.3 snmpTargetAddrExtTable

The snmpTargetAddrExtTable is defined in the "SNMP Community MIB Module" section of [RFC 3584].

If the OCTCD supports SNMPv1v2c Coexistence, it SHALL create one row in snmpTargetAddrExtTable for each SNMPv1v2c Transport Address Access sub-TLV of the SNMPv1v2c Coexistence Configuration TLV as indicated in Table 14.4-5.

Table 14.4-5 - snmpTargetAddrExtTable

Column Name (* = Part of Index)	Column Value
* snmpTargetAddrName	"@STBconfigTag_n_i" where n is 0..m-1 and m is the number of SNMPv1v2c Coexistence Configuration TLVs i is 0..p-1 and p is the number of SNMPv1v2c Transport Address Access sub-TLVs within the SNMPv1v2c Coexistence Configuration element n

Column Name (* = Part of Index)	Column Value
snmpTargetAddrTMask	<Zero-length OCTET STRING> when <TMask> is not provided in the i-th sub-TLV IPv4: SnmpUDPAddress [RFC 3417] OCTET STRING (6) Octets 1-4: <TMask> Octets 5-6: <UDP Port> IPv6: TransportAddressIPv6 [RFC 3419] OCTET STRING (18) Octets 1-16: <TMask> Octets 17-18: <UDP Port>
snmpTargetAddrMMS	Maximum Message Size

14.4.2.1.4 vacmSecurityToGroupTable

The vacmSecurityToGroupTable is defined in the "Definitions" section of [RFC 3415].

If the OCTCD supports SNMPv1v2c Coexistence, it SHALL create two rows in vacmSecurityGroupTable for each SNMPv1v2c Coexistence Configuration TLV as indicated in Table 14.4-6.

The OCTCD SHALL set in vacmSecurityName the keyword @STBconfig_n, where 'n' is a sequential number starting at 0 for each SNMPv1v2c Coexistence Configuration TLV processed (e.g., "@STBconfig_0", "@STBconfig_1", etc.).

The OCTCD SHALL set in vacmGroupName the keyword @STBconfigV1_n for the first row and @STBconfigV2_n for the second row, where 'n' is a sequential number starting at 0 for each SNMPv1v2c Coexistence Configuration TLV processed (e.g., "@STBconfigV1_0", "@STBconfigV1_1", etc.).

Table 14.4-6 - vacmSecurityToGroupTable

Column Name (* = Part of Index)	First Row Column Value	Second Row Column Value
* vacmSecurityModel	SNMPV1 (1)	SNMPV2c (2)
* vacmSecurityName	"@STBconfig_n"	"@STBconfig_n"
vacmGroupName	"@STBconfigV1_n"	"@STBconfigV2_n"
vacmSecurityToGroupStorageType	volatile (2)	volatile (2)
vacmSecurityToGroupStatus	active (1)	active (1)

14.4.2.1.5 vacmAccessTable

The vacmAccessTable is defined in the "Definitions" section of [RFC 3415].

If the OCTCD supports SNMPv1v2c Coexistence, it SHALL create two rows in vacmAccessTable for each SNMPv1v2c Coexistence Configuration TLV as indicated in Table 14.4-7.

The OCTCD SHALL set in vacmGroupName the keyword @STBconfigV1_n for the first row and @STBconfigV2_n for the second row, where 'n' is a sequential number starting at 0 for each SNMPv1v2c Coexistence Configuration TLV processed (e.g., "@STBconfigV1_0", "@STBconfigV1_1", etc.).

Table 14.4-7 - vacmAccessTable

Column Name (* = Part of Index)	Column Value	Column Value
* vacmGroupName	"@STBconfigV1_n"	"@STBconfigV2_n"
* vacmAccessContextPrefix	<zero-length string> or vendor specific (see 14.4.2.1.6).	<zero-length string> or vendor specific (see 14.4.2.1.6).
* vacmAccessSecurityModel	SNMPV1 (1)	SNMPV2c (2)
* vacmAccessSecurityLevel	noAuthNoPriv (1)	noAuthNoPriv (1)
vacmAccessContextMatch	exact (1)	exact (1)
vacmAccessReadViewName	When <AccessViewType> == '1' '2' Set <AccessViewName> Otherwise, set <Zero-length OCTET STRING>	When <AccessViewType> == '1' '2' Set <AccessViewName> Otherwise, set <Zero-length OCTET STRING>
vacmAccessWriteViewName	When <AccessViewType> == '2' Set <AccessViewName> Otherwise, set <Zero-length OCTET STRING>	When <AccessViewType> == '2' Set <AccessViewName> Otherwise, set <Zero-length OCTET STRING>
vacmAccessNotifyViewName	<Zero-length OCTET STRING>	<Zero-length OCTET STRING>
vacmAccessStorageType	volatile (2)	volatile (2)
vacmAccessStatus	active (1)	active (1)

14.4.2.1.6 vacmContextTable

The vacmContextTable is defined in the "Definitions" section of [RFC 3415].

The OCTCD SHALL populate the vacmContextTable with the context name used by the OCTCD to map the SNMPv1v2c Coexistence Configuration TLV information in the vacmAccessTable as indicated in Table 14.4-8.

Table 14.4-8 - vacmContextTable

Column Name (* = Part of Index)	Column Value
* vacmContextName	<zero-length string> or vendor specific (1)

Notes: (1) The OCTCD may use the default Context (zero-length string) or a vendor-specific context to identify the Management Information Base (MIB) for the OCTCD in the case the implementation supports multiple SNMP logical entities within the same SNMP entity (see [eDOCSIS]).

14.4.2.2 SNMPv3 Access View Configuration TLV

This section specifies the mapping of the SNMPv3 Access View configuration TLV (see Section 15.2) to SNMPv3 MIB objects. The SNMPv3 Access View Configuration TLV is used to configure the table vacmViewTreeFamilyTable in a simplified way.

If the OCTCD supports SNMPv1v2c Coexistence, it SHALL create entries in vacmViewTreeFamilyTable as indicated in Table 14.4-9.

Table 14.4-9 - SNMPv3 Access View Configuration TLV Mapping

Sub-TLVs	Variable Name	Associated MIB Object [RFC 3415]
SNMPv3 Access View Name	<i>AccessViewName</i>	vacmViewTreeFamilyViewName
SNMPv3 Access View Subtree	<i>AccessViewSubTree</i>	vacmViewTreeFamilySubtree
SNMPv3 Access View Mask	<i>AccessViewMask</i>	vacmViewTreeFamilyMask
SNMPv3 Access View Type	<i>AccessViewType</i>	vacmViewTreeFamilyType

Disconnected entries in the OCTCD SNMP access configuration database are not expected to be detected by the OCTCD as part of the configuration. Eventually, the SNMP agent will not grant access to SNMP requests, for example, to disconnected Security Names and View trees as a result of a TLV configuration mistake.

Table 14.4-10 describes the OCTCD procedures to populate the SNMP Management Framework Access Control Subsystem [RFC 3412].

14.4.2.2.1 *vacmViewTreeFamilyTable*

The *vacmViewTreeFamilyTable* is defined in the "Definitions" section of [RFC 3415].

If the OCTCD supports SNMPv1v2c Coexistence, it SHALL create one row in *vacmViewTreeFamilyTable* for each SNMPv3 Access View Configuration TLV as indicated in Table 14.4-10.

If the OCTCD supports SNMPv1v2c Coexistence, it SHALL create a log entry with an error code I409.0 when two SNMPv3 Access View Configuration TLVs have identical index components. In such instance, the OCTCD would not be able to create an entry for the second TLV containing the duplicate index.

If the OCTCD supports SNMPv1v2c Coexistence, it SHALL set the object *vacmViewTreeFamilySubtree* to OID 1.3.6 when no sub-TLV SNMPv3 Access View Subtree is defined in the SNMPv3 Access View Configuration TLV.

If the OCTCD supports SNMPv1v2c Coexistence, it SHALL set the object *vacmViewTreeFamilyMask* to the default zero-length string when no sub-TLV SNMPv3 Access View Mask is defined.

If the OCTCD supports SNMPv1v2c Coexistence, it SHALL set the object *vacmViewTreeFamilyType* to the default value 1 (included) when no sub-TLV SNMPv3 Access View Type is defined.

Table 14.4-10 - *vacmViewTreeFamilyTable*

Column Name (* = Part of Index)	Column Value
* <i>vacmViewTreeFamilyViewName</i>	<AccessViewName>
* <i>vacmViewTreeFamilySubtree</i>	<AccessViewSubTree>
<i>vacmViewTreeFamilyMask</i>	<AccessViewMask>
<i>vacmViewTreeFamilyType</i>	<AccessViewType>
<i>vacmViewTreeFamilyStorageType</i>	volatile (2)
<i>vacmViewTreeFamilyStatus</i>	active (1)

14.5 SNMPv3 Notification Receiver Configuration File TLV

This section specifies processing requirements for the SNMPv3 Notification Receiver TLV [MULPIv3.0] when present in the configuration file. The SNMPv3 Notification Receiver TLV is used to configure the Host Thin Chassis SNMP agent with the SNMP entities eligible to receive SNMP Notification PDUs - both Inform and Trap. If the Host Thin Chassis supports SNMPv1v2 Coexistence, Notification Receiver TLV(s) are used to populate the SNMPv3 tables for notification transmission. This section describes the tables and entries the OCTCD will populate based on the SNMPv3 Notification Receiver TLV in order to cause the desired trap transmission:

- snmpNotifyTable
- snmpTargetAddrTable
- snmpTargetParamsTable
- snmpNotifyFilterProfileTable
- snmpNotifyFilterTable
- snmpCommunityTable
- usmUserTable
- vacmContextTable
- vacmSecurityToGroupTable
- vacmAccessTable
- vacmViewTreeFamilyTable

The mapping from the TLV to these tables is described in the following section.

14.5.1 Mapping of TLV fields into created SNMPv3 table rows

The following sections illustrate how the fields from the config file SNMPv3 Notification Receiver TLV elements are placed into the SNMPv3 tables. The TLV fields are shown below as:

Table 14.5-1 - SNMPv3 Notification Receiver TLV Mapping

Sub-TLVs	Variable Name	Associated MIB Object
SNMPv3 Notification Receiver IPv4 Address	<i>TAddress</i>	snmpTargetAddrTAddress [RFC 3413]
SNMPv3 Notification Receiver IPv6 Address	<i>TAddress</i>	snmpTargetAddrTAddress [RFC 3413]
SNMPv3 Notification Receiver UDP Port Number	<i>Port</i>	snmpTargetAddrTAddress [RFC 3413]
SNMPv3 Notification Receiver Trap Type	<i>TrapType</i>	see following sections
SNMPv3 Notification Receiver Timeout	<i>Timeout</i>	Future (SNMP Inform) snmpTargetAddrTimeout [RFC 3413]
SNMPv3 Notification Receiver Retries	<i>Retries</i>	Future (SNMP Inform) snmpTargetAddrRetryCount [RFC 3413]
SNMPv3 Notification Receiver Filtering Parameters	<i>FilterOID</i>	Optional
SNMPv3 Notification Receiver Security Name	<i>SecurityName</i>	Optional

The variable names from Table 14.5-1 are defined as follows:

- <TAddress> A 32-bit IPv4 or IPv6 address of a notification receiver
- <Port> A 16-bit UDP Port number on the notification receiver to receive the notifications
- <TrapType> Defines the notification type
- <Timeout> 16-bit timeout, in milliseconds to wait before sending a retry of an Inform Notification
- <Retries> 16-bit number of times to retry an Inform after the first Inform transmission
- <FilterOID> The OID of the snmpTrapOID value that is the root of the MIB subtree that defines all of the notifications to be sent to the Notification Receiver.
- <SecurityName> The security name specified on the TLV element, or "@ STBnotifyconfig " if not specified.

Table 14.5-2 through Table 14.5-13 are shown in the order that the agent will search down through them when a notification is generated in order to determine to whom to send the notification, and how to fill out the contents of the notification packet.

In configuring entries in these SNMPv3 tables, note the following:

The Community Name for traps in SNMPv1 and SNMPv2 packets is configured as "public". The Security Name in traps and informs in SNMPv3 packets where no security name has been specified is configured as "@STBnotifyconfig", in which case the security level is "noAuthNoPriv".

Several columnar objects are configured with a value beginning with the string "@STBnotifyconfig ". If these tables are configured through other mechanisms, network operators should not use values beginning with to avoid conflicts with the mapping process specified here.

14.5.1.1 *snmpNotifyTable*

The snmpNotifyTable is defined in the "Notification MIB Module" section of [RFC 3413].

If the OCTCD supports SNMPv1v2c Coexistence, it SHALL create two rows with fixed values if one or more SNMPv3 Notification Receiver TLV elements are present in the config file.

Table 14.5-2 - *snmpNotifyTable*

Column Name (* = Part of Index)	1st Row Column Value	2nd Row Column Value
* snmpNotifyName	"@STBnotifyconfig_inform"	"@STBnotifyconfig_trap"
snmpNotifyTag	"@STBnotifyconfig_inform"	"@STBnotifyconfig_trap"
snmpNotifyType	inform (2)	trap (1)
snmpNotifyStorageType	volatile (2)	volatile (2)
snmpNotifyRowStatus	active (1)	active (1)

14.5.1.2 *snmpTargetAddrTable*

The snmpTargetAddrTable is defined in the "Definitions" section of [RFC 3413].

If the OCTCD supports SNMPv1v2c Coexistence, it SHALL create one row in snmpTargetAddrTable for each SNMPv3 Notification Receiver IPv4 Address encoding and SNMPv3 Notification Receiver IPv6 Address encoding of SNMPv3 Notification Receiver TLV in the config file.

Thus, two entries are created in this table if both SNMPv3 Notification Receiver IPv4 Address and SNMPv3 Notification Receiver IPv6 Address sub-TLVs are included in the same TLV. All other parameters are the same.

Table 14.5-3 - snmpTargetAddrTable

Column Name (* = Part of Index)	Column Value
* snmpTargetAddrName	"@STBnotifyconfig_n_IPv[4 6]" where n is 0..m-1 and m is the number of SNMPv3 Notification Receiver config file TLVs @STBnotifyconfig_n_IPv4 is for an entry created if SNMPv3 Notification Receiver config file TLV contains <TrapType> of TDomain SntpUDPAddress @STBnotifyconfig_n_IPv6 is for an entry created if SNMPv3 Notification Receiver config file TLV contains <TrapType> of TDomain TransportAddressIPv6
snmpTargetAddrTDomain	IPv4: snmpUDPDDomain [RFC 3417] IPv6: transportDomainUdpIpv6 [RFC 3419]
snmpTargetAddrTAddress (IP Address and UDP Port of the Notification Receiver)	IPv4: SntpUDPAddress [RFC 3417] OCTET STRING (6) Octets 1-4: <TAddress> Octets 5-6: <Port> IPv6: TransportAddressIPv6 [RFC 3419] OCTET STRING (18) Octets 1-16: <TAddress> Octets 17-18: <Port>
snmpTargetAddrTimeout	<Timeout>
snmpTargetAddrRetryCount	<Retries>
snmpTargetAddrTagList	"@STBnotifyconfig_trap" if <TrapType> is 1, 2, or 4 "@STBnotifyconfig_inform" if <TrapType> is 3 or 5,
snmpTargetAddrParams	"@STBnotifyconfig_n"
snmpTargetAddrStorageType	volatile (2)
snmpTargetAddrRowStatus	active (1)

14.5.1.3 snmpTargetAddrExtTable

The snmpTargetAddrExtTable is defined in the "SNMP Community MIB Module" section of [RFC 3584].

If the OCTCD supports SNMPv1v2c Coexistence, it SHALL create one row in snmpTargetAddrExtTable for each SNMPv3 Notification Receiver TLV in the config file.

Table 14.5-4 - snmpTargetAddrExtTable

Column Name (* = Part of Index)	Column Value
* snmpTargetAddrName	"@STBnotifyconfig_n_IPv[4 6]" where n is 0..m-1 and m is the number of SNMPv3 Notification Receiver config file TLVs (see Table 14.5-3 for details).
snmpTargetAddrTMask	<Zero-length OCTET STRING>
snmpTargetAddrMMS	SM Maximum Message Size

14.5.1.4 snmpTargetParamsTable

The snmpTargetParamsTable is defined in the "Definitions" section of [RFC 3413].

If the OCTCD supports SNMPv1v2c Coexistence, it SHALL create one row in snmpTargetParamsTable for each SNMPv3 Notification Receiver TLV in the config file.

Table 14.5-5 - snmpTargetParamsTable

Column Name (* = Part of Index)	Column Value
* snmpTargetParamsName	"@STBnotifyconfig_n" where n is 0..m-1 and m is the number of SNMPv3 Notification Receiver config file TLVs
snmpTargetParamsMPModel SYNTAX: SnmMessageProcessingModel	SNMPv1 (0) if <TrapType> is 1 SNMPv2c (1) if <TrapType> is 2 or 3 SNMPv3 (3) if <TrapType> is 4 or 5
snmpTargetParamsSecurityModel SYNTAX: SnpSecurityModel	SNMPv1 (1) if <TrapType> is 1 SNMPv2c (2) if <TrapType> is 2 or 3 USM (3) if <TrapType> is 4 or 5 Note: The mapping of SNMP protocol types to value here are different from snmpTargetParamsMPModel
snmpTargetParamsSecurityName	If <TrapType> is 1, 2, or 3, or if the <Security Name> field is zero-length: "@STBnotifyconfig" If <TrapType> is 4 or 5, and the <Security Name> field is non-zero length: <SecurityName>
snmpTargetParamsSecurityLevel	If <TrapType> is 1, 2, or 3, or if the <Security Name> field is zero-length: noAuthNoPriv (1) If <TrapType> is 4 or 5, and the <Security Name> field is non-zero length: The security level of <SecurityName>
snmpTargetParamsStorageType	volatile (2)
snmpTargetParamsRowStatus	active (1)

14.5.1.5 snmpNotifyFilterProfileTable

The snmpNotifyFilterProfileTable is defined in the "Notification MIB Module" section of [RFC 3413].

The OCTCD MAY create one row in snmpNotifyFilterProfileTable for each SNMPv3 Notification Receiver TLV that has a non-zero <FilterOID>.

Table 14.5-6 - snmpNotifyFilterProfileTable

Column Name (* = Part of Index)	Column Value
* snmpTargetParamsName	"@STBnotifyconfig_n" where n is 0..m-1 and m is the number of SNMPv3 Notification Receiver config file TLVs
snmpNotifyFilterProfileName	"@STBnotifyconfig_n" where n is 0..m-1 and m is the number of SNMPv3 Notification Receiver config file TLVs
snmpNotifyFilterProfileStorType	volatile (2)
snmpNotifyFilterProfileRowStatus	active (1)

14.5.1.6 snmpNotifyFilterTable

The snmpNotifyFilterTable is defined in the "Notification MIB Module" section of [RFC 3413].

If the OCTCD supports SNMPv1v2c Coexistence, it MAY create one row in snmpNotifyFilterTable for each SNMPv3 Notification Receiver TLV that has a non-zero <FilterOID>.

Table 14.5-7 - snmpNotifyFilterTable

Column Name (* = Part of Index)	Column Value
* snmpNotifyFilterProfileName	"@STBnotifyconfig_n" where n is 0..m-1 and m is the number of SNMPv3 Notification Receiver config file TLVs
* snmpNotifyFilterSubtree	<FilterOID>
snmpNotifyFilterMask	<Zero-length OCTET STRING>
snmpNotifyFilterType	included (1)
snmpNotifyFilterStorageType	volatile (2)
snmpNotifyFilterRowStatus	active (1)

14.5.1.7 snmpCommunityTable

The snmpCommunityTable is defined in the "SNMP Community MIB Module" section of [RFC 3584].

If the OCTCD supports SNMPv1v2c Coexistence, it SHALL create one row in snmpCommunityTable with fixed values if one or more SNMPv3 Notification Receiver TLVs are present in the config file. This causes SNMPv1 and v2c notifications to contain the community string in snmpCommunityName.

Table 14.5-8 - snmpCommunityTable

Column Name (* = Part of Index)	Column Value
* snmpCommunityIndex	"@STBnotifyconfig"
snmpCommunityName	"public"
snmpCommunitySecurityName	"@STBnotifyconfig"
snmpCommunityContextEngineID	<the engineID of the OCTCD associated SNMP Entity>
snmpCommunityContextName	<Zero-length OCTET STRING>
snmpCommunityTransportTag	<Zero-length OCTET STRING>

Column Name (* = Part of Index)	Column Value
snmpCommunityStorageType	volatile (2)
snmpCommunityStatus	active (1)

14.5.1.8 usmUserTable

The usmUserTable is defined in the "Definitions" section of [RFC 3414].

If the OCTCD supports SNMPv1v2c Coexistence, it MAY create one row in usmUserTable with fixed values if one or more SNMPv3 Notification Receiver TLVs are present in the config file. Other rows are created, one each time the engine ID of a trap receiver is discovered. This specifies the user name on the remote notification receivers to which notifications are to be sent.

One row in the usmUserTable is created. When the engine ID of each notification receiver is discovered, the agent copies this row into a new row and replaces the 0x00 in the usmUserEngineID column with the newly-discovered value.

Table 14.5-9 - usmUserTable

Column Name (* = Part of Index)	Column Value
* usmUserEngineID	0x00
* usmUserName	"@STBnotifyconfig" When other rows are created, this is replaced with the <SecurityName> field from the SNMPv3 Notification Receiver config file TLV.
usmUserSecurityName	"@STBnotifyconfig" When other rows are created, this is replaced with the <SecurityName> field from the SNMPv3 Notification Receiver config file TLV.
usmUserCloneFrom	<don't care> This row cannot be cloned.
usmUserAuthProtocol	None When other rows are created, this is replaced with None or MD5, depending on the security level of the V3 User.
usmUserAuthKeyChange	<don't care> Write-only
usmUserOwnAuthKeyChange	<don't care> Write-only
usmUserPrivProtocol	None When other rows are created, this is replaced with None or DES, depending on the security level of the V3 User.
usmUserPrivKeyChange	<don't care> Write-only
usmUserOwnPrivKeyChange	<don't care> Write-only
usmUserPublic	<Zero-length OCTET STRING>
usmUserStorageType	volatile (2)
usmUserStatus	active (1)

14.5.1.9 vacmContextTable

The vacmContextTable is defined in the "Definitions" section of [RFC 3415].

If the OCTCD supports SNMPv1v2c Coexistence and a Notification Receiver TLV38 is received, it SHALL create one row in vacmContextTable with the zero length octet string for vacmContextName object.

Table 14.5-10 - vacmContextTable

Column Name (* = Part of Index)	Column Value
* vacmContextName	<Zero-length OCTET STRING>

14.5.1.10 vacmSecurityToGroupTable

The vacmSecurityToGroupTable is defined in the "Definitions" section of [RFC 3415].

If the OCTCD supports SNMPv1v2c Coexistence, it SHALL create two rows in vacmSecurityToGroupTable with fixed values if one or more SNMPv3 Notification Receiver TLVs are present in the config file.

Table 14.5-11 depicts the two rows with fixed values which are used for the SNMPv3 Notification Receiver TLV entries with <TrapType> set to 1, 2, or 3, or with a zero-length <SecurityName>.

Table 14.5-11 - vacmSecurityToGroupTable

Column Name (* = Part of Index)	First Row Column Value	Second Row Column Value
* vacmSecurityModel	SNMPV1 (1)	SNMPV2c (2)
* vacmSecurityName	"@STBnotifyconfig"	"@STBnotifyconfig"
vacmGroupName	"@STBnotifyconfigV1"	"@STBnotifyconfigV2"
vacmSecurityToGroupStorageType	volatile (2)	volatile (2)
vacmSecurityToGroupStatus	active (1)	active (1)

14.5.1.11 vacmAccessTable

The vacmAccessTable is defined in the "Definitions" section of [RFC 3415].

If the OCTCD supports SNMPv1v2c Coexistence, it SHALL create two rows in vacmAccessTable with fixed values if one or more SNMPv3 Notification Receiver TLVs are present in the config file.

Table 14.5-12 depicts the two rows with fixed values which are used for the SNMPv3 Notification Receiver TLV entries with <TrapType> set to 1, 2, or 3, or with a zero-length <SecurityName>.

Table 14.5-12 - vacmAccessTable

Column Name (* = Part of Index)	Column Value	Column Value
* vacmGroupName	"@STBnotifyconfigV1"	"@STBnotifyconfigV2"
* vacmAccessContextPrefix	<zero-length string>	<zero-length string>
* vacmAccessSecurityModel	SNMPV1 (1)	SNMPV2c (2)
* vacmAccessSecurityLevel	noAuthNoPriv (1)	noAuthNoPriv (1)

Column Name (* = Part of Index)	Column Value	Column Value
vacmAccessContextMatch	exact (1)	exact (1)
vacmAccessReadViewName	<Zero-length OCTET STRING>	<Zero-length OCTET STRING>
vacmAccessWriteViewName	<Zero-length OCTET STRING>	<Zero-length OCTET STRING>
vacmAccessNotifyViewName	"@STBnotifyconfig"	"@STBnotifyconfig"
vacmAccessStorageType	volatile (2)	volatile (2)
vacmAccessStatus	active (1)	active (1)

14.5.1.12 vacmViewTreeFamilyTable

The vacmViewTreeFamilyTable is defined in the "Definitions" section of [RFC 3415].

If the OCTCD supports SNMPv1v2c Coexistence, it SHALL create one row in vacmViewTreeFamilyTable with fixed values if one or more SNMPv3 Notification Receiver TLVs are present in the config file.

This row is used for the SNMPv3 Notification Receiver TLV entries with <TrapType> set to 1, 2, or 3 or with a zero-length <SecurityName>.

Table 14.5-13 - vacmViewTreeFamilyTable

Column Name (* = Part of Index)	Column Value
* vacmViewTreeFamilyViewName	"@STBnotifyconfig"
* vacmViewTreeFamilySubtree	1.3
vacmViewTreeFamilyMask	<default from MIB>
vacmViewTreeFamilyType	included (1)
vacmViewTreeFamilyStorageType	volatile (2)
vacmViewTreeFamilyStatus	active (1)

14.6 Host MIB Access Via OOB and Local Loopback

14.6.1 MIB access via the local loopback address

In order to give SNMP access to co-located applications, the OCTCD eSTB Agent SHALL listen on a local loopback address.

The agent SHALL allow such access from the local loopback IP address 127.0.0.1.

The agent SHALL allow read access to MIB objects using the default community name "public" unless it is specified through an alternate provisioning mechanism (e.g., TLV217).

The agent SHALL allow write access to MIB objects using the default community name "private" unless it is specified through an alternate provisioning mechanism (e.g., TLV217).

The agent MAY allow read access using other default community names.

The agent MAY allow write access using other default community names.

14.6.2 MIB access via OOB

In order to give SNMP access to remote applications using the OOB, the OCTCD eSTB Agent SHALL listen on the Extended Channel.

The agent SHALL allow read access to MIB objects using the default community name “public” unless it is specified through an alternate provisioning mechanism (e.g., TLV217).

The agent SHALL allow write access to MIB objects using the default community name “private” unless it is specified through an alternate provisioning mechanism.

When operating in OOB mode, the Host SHALL send a *new_flow_req()* APDU with service_type = 0x01 (IP unicast) to obtain an extended channel IP flow for use by the eSTB SNMP agent.

14.7 eSTB Access to eCM MIB Objects

In order to include eCM status information in the Host diagnostic functionality, the OCTCD eSTB SHALL have SNMP read access to the eCM MIB objects listed in Table 14.7-1. OCTCD eSTB eCM MIB access is limited to the objects in this table.

When operating in SEB mode, the OCTCD SHALL have SNMP read access to the DSG MIB [DSG].

Table 14.7-1 - OCTCD eSTB eCM MIB Objects

docsIfDownChannelFrequency
docsIfDownChannelPower
docsIfCmStatusValue
docsIfSigQSignalNoise
docsIfUpChannelFrequency
docsIfCmStatusTxPower

15 HOST THIN CHASSIS OPERATIONAL PARAMETERS CONFIGURATION

This section defines the configuration of management related functions of the OCTCD.

15.1 Host Thin Chassis Device configuration

This specification defines a provisioning mechanism that consists of two phases:

- IP acquisition via DHCP (see Section 13.4).
- Proxy of OCTCD configuration parameters in the form of TLVs by the eCM.

The Table 15.1-1 defines the basic provisioning steps for the OCTCD. After the OCTCD receives a "2-Way OK UCID" from the eCM, it initiates processing of the eSTB TLVs passed by the eCM and DHCP address acquisition.

Table 15.1-1 - Provisioning steps of the OCTCD

Flow Step	Operation	Description	Requirement	eSAFE MIB esafeProvisioning StatusProgress
OCTCD-Prov-0	"2-Way OK, UCID" (See [DSG])	The eCM signals to the eSTB the message 2-Way OK, UCID	Section 13.7.1.1	(1) notInitiated
OCTCD-Prov-1	eSTB TLVs processing	The OCTCD process the eSTB TLVs received from the eCM (1)	See section 15.2 eSTB Configuration TLVs	(2) inProgress
OCTCD-Prov-2	IPv4 Address Acquisition	eSTB acquires an IPv4 address	Section 13.7.1	(2) inProgress
OCTCD-Prov-3	IPv6 Address Acquisition	eSTB acquires an IPv6 address	Section 13.7.2	(2) inProgress
OCTCD-Prov-4	OCTCD provisioning completed	The OCTCD provisioning is completed		(3) finished

If a failure occurs in processing the eSTB TLVs, the value of the eSAFE MIB object `esafeProvisioningStatusFailureFlow` SHALL be set to OCTCD-Prov-1, and the value of the eSAFE MIB object `esafeProvisioningStatusProgress` SHALL be set to (3) finished.

If a failure occurs in acquiring an IPv4 address, the value of the eSAFE MIB object `esafeProvisioningStatusFailureFlow` SHALL be set to OCTCD-Prov-2, and the eSAFE MIB object `esafeProvisioningStatusProgress` SHALL be set to (3) finished.

If a failure occurs in acquiring an IPv6 address, the value of the eSAFE MIB object `esafeProvisioningStatusFailureFlow` SHALL be set to OCTCD-Prov-3, and the eSAFE MIB object `esafeProvisioningStatusProgress` SHALL be set to (3) finished.

15.1.1 eCM Proxy mechanism for the configuration of the OCTCD

For the purpose of configuring the OCTCD by the means of this specification, the eCM supports the 'eCM Config File Encapsulation' TLV defined in [eDOCSIS]. The eCM passes the content of TLV Type 217 to the OCTCD. Such content corresponds to the eSTB configuration TLVs (see Section 15.2).

The OCTCD provisioning process defined above relies on the eCM registration process (see [RFiv2.0]), which supports acceptable security provisions for the OCTCD configuration parameters defined in Section 15.2. An increase of the service sensitivity of new configuration parameters may determine the need of a more robust provisioning mechanism and perhaps independent of the eCM.

When acquiring an IPv4 address, the OCTCD SHALL include in the eCM DHCP option 43 sub-option 15 the text "ESTB" to indicate support of the eCM encapsulation TLV feature by the eSTB.

When acquiring an IPv6 address, the eCM in the OCTCD SHALL include in the [eDOCSIS] eCM DHCP "eCM config file encapsulation" option the text "ESTB" to indicate support of the eCM encapsulation TLV feature by the eSTB.

The OCTCD SHALL pass the content of TLV 217 from its eCM config file to the eSTB. The mechanism to pass such content from the eCM to the eSTB is vendor-specific.

The OCTCD SHALL parse the eSTB TLVs contained in TLV 217 only after receiving the "2-Way OK, UCID" message from the eCM but before beginning its IP address acquisition process.

15.2 eSTB Configuration TLVs

This section defines the TLV requirements for the OCTCD when operating in two-way DSG Mode. The OCTCD is required to support the TLVs defined in this section. Some TLVs were initially defined in other specifications such as [RFIPv2.0] and [MULIPv3.0]. The features around those TLVs are maintained. However, the behavior may be different to accommodate the OCTCD provisioning needs.

In case of failure to set one or more configuration parameters, the OCTCD logs the error condition in docsDevEventTable (see Annex A of [HOST-MIB]) and updates the eCM to properly report the status of esafeProvisioningStatusTable [eDOCSIS].

The OCTCD SHALL process the eSTB Configuration TLVs and disregard unrecognized TLVs or sub-TLVs within a TLV.

The OCTCD SHALL create a log entry with an error code I401.1 when unrecognized TLVs or sub-TLVs are present in the configuration file.

The OCTCD SHALL create a log entry with an error code I401.2 in case of an invalid TLV Type encoding.

The OCTCD SHALL create a log entry with an error code I401.3 when no resources are available or the limit of configurable elements is reached.

In the case of an error condition while processing configuration parameters, the OCTCD SHALL update the eCM with the Provisioning step (see 15.1.1) and the error condition to be reported by the eCM in the esafeProvisioningStatusTable [eDOCSIS].

15.2.1 SNMPv1v2c Coexistence Configuration

This TLV (Type 53) specifies the SNMPv1v2c Coexistence Access Control configuration of the OCTCD. This TLV creates entries in SNMPv3 tables as specified in Section 14.4.

The OCTCD SHALL create a log entry with an error code I453.1 if sub-TLV 53.1 SNMPv1v2c Community Name is not present in a TLV 53.

The OCTCD SHALL create a log entry with an error code I453.2 if the sub-TLV 53.2 SNMPv1v2c Transport Address Access is not present.

The OCTCD SHALL support multiple instances of sub-TLV 53.2 SNMPv1v2c Transport Address Access within a TLV 53.

The OCTCD SHALL create a log entry with an error code I453.3 for each repeated sub-TLVs other than sub-TLV 53.2.

The OCTCD SHALL retain the first sub-TLV and discard the remaining sub-TLVs.

The OCTCD SHALL create a log entry with an error code I453.4 if a value within a TLV 53 is rejected due to SNMP syntax conflicts. These conflicts may include values outside of prescribed ranges, invalid lengths, and other syntax errors. For example, sub-TLV 53.2.1, the SNMP Transport Address, might specify an incorrectly constructed IP address with a length other than either that of an IPv4 or IPv6 address.

The OCTCD SHALL create a log entry with an error code I453.5 if a value within a TLV 53 is rejected because it exceeds the entry limit for the applicable table.

The OCTCD SHALL create a log entry with an error code I453.6 if a TLV 53 attempts to create an SNMP table entry that already exists.

The OCTCD SHALL support a minimum of five SNMPv1v2c Coexistence Configuration TLVs.

Type	Length	Value
53	N	Composite

Note: The number of entries an OCTCD can support in SNMPv3 tables is independent of the number of TLVs the eCM supports.

15.2.1.1 SNMPv1v2c Community Name

This sub-TLV specifies the Community Name (community string) used in SNMP requests to the OCTCD.

Type	Length	Value
53.1	1..32	Text

15.2.1.2 SNMPv1v2c Transport Address Access

This sub-TLV specifies the Transport Address and Transport Address Mask pair used by the OCTCD to grant access to the SNMP entity querying the OCTCD.

The OCTCD SHALL create a log entry with an error code I453.3 if a sub-TLV Transport Address Access (Type 53.2) has more than one sub-TLV 53.2.1 or 53.2.2.

Type	Length	Value
53.2	N	Variable

15.2.1.2.1 SNMPv1v2c Transport Address

This sub-TLV specifies the Transport Address to use in conjunction with the Transport Address Mask used by the OCTCD to grant access to the SNMP entity querying the OCTCD.

The OCTCD SHALL create a log entry with an error code I453.2 if sub-TLV 53.2.1 is not present in the configuration sub-TLV 53.2.

Type	Length	Value
53.2.1	6 or 18	Transport Address

Note: Length is 6 bytes for IPv4 and 18 bytes for IPv6.

15.2.1.2.2 SNMPv1v2c Transport Address Mask

This sub-TLV specifies the Transport Address Mask to use in conjunction with the Transport Address used by the OCTCD to grant access to the SNMP entity querying the OCTCD. This sub-TLV is optional.

Type	Length	Value
53.2.2	6 or 18	Transport Address Mask

Note: Length is 6 bytes for IPv4 and 18 bytes for IPv6.

15.2.1.3 SNMPv1v2c Access View Type

This sub-TLV specifies the type of access to grant to the community name of this TLV. Sub-TLV Type 53.3 is optional. If sub-TLV 53.3 is not present in TLV-53, the default value of the access type to grant to the community name specified in sub-TLV 53.1 is read-only.

Type	Length	Value
53.3	1	1: Read-only 2: Read-write

15.2.1.4 SNMPv1v2c Access View Name

This sub-TLV specifies the name of the view that provides the access indicated in sub-TLV SNMPv1v2c Access View Type.

Type	Length	Value
53.4	1.32	String

15.2.2 SNMPv3 Access View Configuration

This TLV (Type 54) specifies the SNMPv3 Simplified Access View configuration of the OCTCD. This TLV creates entries in SNMPv3 tables as specified in Section 14.4.

The OCTCD SHALL support a minimum of 10 SNMPv3 Access View Configuration TLVs (Type 54).

The OCTCD SHALL create a log entry with an error code I454.1 if the sub-TLV SNMPv3 Access View Name (Type 54.1) is not present in TLV 54.

The OCTCD SHALL support multiple TLVs with same value of SNMPv3 Access View Name sub-TLV (Type 54.1).

The OCTCD SHALL create a log entry with an error code I454.2 if multiple sub-TLVs of the same type are included in a TLV 54.4.

The OCTCD SHALL create a log entry with an error code I454.3 if a value within a TLV 54 is rejected due to SNMP syntax conflicts.

The OCTCD SHALL create a log entry with an error code I454.4 if a value within a TLV 54 is rejected because it exceeds the entry limit for the applicable table.

The OCTCD SHALL create a log entry with an error code I454.5 if a TLV 54 attempts to create an SNMP table entry that already exists.

Type	Length	Value
54	N	Composite

Note: The number of entries a OCTCD can support in SNMPv3 tables is independent of the number of TLVs the eCM supports for its own management configuration, in the case both CM and OCTCD share the same SNMP entity (see [eDOCSIS] and [RFC 3411]).

15.2.2.1 SNMPv3 Access View Name

This sub-TLV specifies the administrative name of the View defined by this TLV.

Type	Length	Value
54.1	1..32	Text

15.2.2.2 SNMPv3 Access View Subtree

This sub-TLV specifies an ASN.1 formatted object Identifier that represents the filter sub-tree included in the Access View TLV.

The OCTCD SHALL accept only encoded values that start with the ASN.1 Universal type 6 (Object Identifier) byte, followed by the ASN.1 length field, and then the ASN.1 encoded object identifier components. For example, the sub-tree 1.3.6 is encoded as 0x06 0x03 0x01 0x03 0x06.

If sub-TLV 54.2 is not included in TLV 54, the OCTCD SHALL use as default the OID sub-tree 1.3.6.

Type	Length	Value
54.2	N	OID

15.2.2.3 SNMPv3 Access View Mask

This sub-TLV specifies the bit mask to apply to the Access View Subtree of the Access View TLV.

Type	Length	Value
54.3	0..16	Bits

The OCTCD SHALL assign a zero-length string to SNMPv3 Access View Mask TLV 54.3 if TLV 54 is present but sub-TLV 54.3 is not included.

15.2.2.4 SNMPv3 Access View Type

This sub-TLV specifies the inclusion or exclusion of the sub-tree indicated by SNMPv3 Access View Subtree sub-TLV 54.2 in the SNMPv3 Access View Configuration TLV 54. The value 1 indicates the sub-tree of SNMPv3 Access View SubTree is included in the Access View. The value 2 indicates the sub-tree of SNMPv3 Access View Sub Tree is excluded from the Access View.

Type	Length	Value
54.4	1	1: included 2: excluded

The OCTCD SHALL assign the value 'included' to SNMPv3 Access View Type sub-TLV 54.4 if TLV 54 is present but sub-TLV 54.4 is not included.

15.2.3 SNMP MIB Object

This TLV specifies the mechanism for setting writable SNMP MIB objects using eSTB TLV constructs.

The value of this TLV Type is one SNMP VarBind as defined in [RFC 1157]. The VarBind is encoded in ASN.1 Basic Encoding Rules, just as it would be if part of an SNMP Set request.

The OCTCD SHALL treat TLV 11 as if it were part of an SNMP Set Request with the following caveats: It treats the request as fully authorized (it cannot refuse the request for lack of access privilege), and no SNMP response is generated by the OCTCD.

The OCTCD SHALL process multiple TLV 11 encodings as if simultaneous.

The OCTCD SHALL ignore unrecognized SNMP MIB objects in TLV 11 and create a log entry with an error code I411.1 in case of an unrecognized OID in the varbind list.

The OCTCD SHALL create a log entry with an error code I411.2 in case of duplicated SNMP MIB object instances in TLV 11 being set to the same or different value.

The OCTCD SHALL create a log entry with an error code I411.3 in case of an invalid varbind encoding in TLV 11.

Type	Length	Value
11	N	SNMP varbind

15.2.4 Vendor ID Encoding

The Vendor ID is defined in [RFiv2.0] and used in this specification for similar purposes. The value field contains the vendor identification specified by the three-byte vendor-specific Organization Unique Identifier of the OCTCD MAC address. This TLV is used in this specification as a sub-tlv of the Vendor Specific Information TLV. Other vendor-specific areas of application are possible. This TLV has no meaning when used as a standalone TLV and is ignored by the OCTCD.

When used as a sub-field of the Vendor Specific Information field, this identifies the Vendor ID of the OCTCDs that are intended to use this information.

The Vendor ID 0xFFFFFFFF is a reserved value in [RFiv2.0] is not currently used in this specification, but stays reserved.

Type	Length	Value
8	3	OUI

15.2.5 Vendor Specific Information

This TLV type is used to extend the capabilities of the OCTCD specification, through the use of vendor-specific features. The Vendor Specific Information TLV comes from [RFiv2.0], where it is defined as part of a multipurpose encapsulation known as DOCSIS Extension Field.

This TLV always includes only one Vendor ID field (see Section 15.2.4) to indicate that the settings apply to a specific vendor device.

The OCTCD SHALL ignore a Vendor Specific Information TLV 43 that includes a Vendor ID different from that of the OCTCD.

The OCTCD SHALL create a log entry with an error code I443.1 if the Vendor ID TLV 8 is not the first sub-TLV in a Vendor Specific Information TLV 43.

Type	Length	Value
43	N	

15.2.6 IP Mode Control

This TLV (Type 1) is used to inform the OCTCD in which IP mode it should operate.

Note: This TLV is only to be used to control the IP address mode of the eSTB WAN-facing interface.

The eSTB in the OCTCD SHALL acquire an IPv4 address and operate in IPv4 mode when the value of IP Mode Control TLV 1 is set to 0.

The eSTB in the OCTCD SHALL acquire an IPv6 address and operate in IPv6 mode when the value of IP Mode Control TLV 1 is set to 1.

The eSTB in the OCTCD SHALL acquire both an IPv4 and IPv6 address and operate in Dual-stack mode when the value of IP Mode Control TLV 1 is set to 2.

If IP Mode Control TLV 1 is not present, the eSTB in the OCTCD SHALL acquire an IP addresses on its WAN-facing interface (ifIndex 1) as follows:.

If the eCM has acquired an IPv4 address, the OCTCD acquires an IPv4 address.

If the eCM has acquired an IPv6 address, the OCTCD acquires an IPv6 address.

If the eCM has acquired an IPv4 address and an IPv6 address, the OCTCD acquires both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses.

The OCTCD uses an implementation-specific mechanism to determine which IP address type(s) the eCM has successfully acquired. The OCTCD SHALL query the eCM's IP address types immediately upon completion of all the following processes: the IPv4 address acquisition process, the IPv6 address completion process, and the CMTS registration process. When the eCM is operating in Dual-stack Provisioning Mode, it is possible for the eCM to register with the CMTS while there are still DHCPv4 retries remaining. In this case, the OCTCD SHALL wait until all DHCPv4 retries are exhausted before querying the eCM.

The OCTCD SHALL create a log entry with an error code I401.11 if multiple TLV1s are received. The value of the first received TLV1 is retained and the subsequent TLV1s are discarded.

Type	Length	Value
1	1	0: IPv4 1: IPv6 2: Dual-stack Provisioning Mode

15.2.7 SNMPv3 Notification Receiver

This TLV specifies a Network Management Station that will receive notifications from the Host. If the Host supports SNMPv1v2 Coexistence mode, then see 14.5 for related tables definition requirements. Otherwise, internal representation and storage is manufacturer-defined. Up to 10 of these elements may be included in the configuration file. Please refer to [MULPIv3.0] for additional details of TLV-38 usage.

The OCTCD SHALL use TLV 38 to define SNMP Notification Receivers.

The OCTCD SHALL support multiple but unique instances of TLV 38.

The OCTCD SHALL discard duplicate TLV 38 (i.e., identical).

The OCTCD MAY support the UDP port number assigned with sub-TLV38.2.

The OCTCD MAY support the Notification Receiver Timeout assigned with sub-TLV38.4. This is applicable only to SNMP Inform PDUs.

The OCTCD MAY support the Notification Receiver Retries assigned with sub-TLV38.5. This is applicable only to SNMP Inform PDUs.

The OCTCD MAY support Notification Receiver Filtering assigned with sub-TLV38.6.

The OCTCD MAY specify Notification Receiver Security Name with sub-TLV38.7.

The OCTCD SHALL require sub-TLV38.1 (IPv4) or TLV38.8 (IPv6).

The OCTCD SHALL require at least one sub-TLV 38.3 with SNMPv2c Trap Type (2).

The OCTCD SHALL create a log entry with an error code I438.1 if duplicate (i.e., identical) Type 38 TLVs are received in the configuration file.

The OCTCD SHALL create a log entry with an error code I438.2 if no IP address is specified in either sub-TLV 38.1 or sub-TLV 38.8.

The OCTCD SHALL create a log entry with an error code I438.3 if at least one of the Notification Receiver sub-types TLV38.3 does NOT specify SNMPv2c Trap Type (2).

The OCTCD SHALL create a log entry with an error code I438.4 if an IPv6 address specified in sub-TLV38.8 (IP mode) is not consistent with the IP version specified in TLV-1.

Type	Length	Value
38	N	composite

15.2.7.1 SNMPv3 Notification Receiver IPv4 Address

This sub-TLV specifies the IPv4 address of the notification receiver.

Type	Length	Value
38.1	4	IPv4 Address

15.2.7.2 SNMPv3 Notification Receiver UDP Port Number

This sub-TLV specifies the UDP port number of the notification receiver. If this sub-TLV is not present, the default value of 162 should be used.

Type	Length	Value
38.2	2	UDP port number

15.2.7.3 SNMPv3 Notification Receiver Trap Type

Type	Length	Value
38.3	2	trap type

This sub-TLV specifies the type of trap to send. The trap type may take values:

- 1 = SNMP v1 trap in an SNMP v1 packet
- 2 = SNMP v2c trap in an SNMP v2c packet
- 3 = SNMP inform in an SNMP v2c packet
- 4 = SNMP v2c trap in an SNMP v3 packet
- 5 = SNMP inform in an SNMP v3 packet

15.2.7.4 SNMPv3 Notification Receiver Timeout

This sub-TLV specifies the timeout value to use when sending an optional Inform message to the notification receiver.

Type	Length	Value
38.4	2	time in milliseconds

15.2.7.5 SNMPv3 Notification Receiver Retries

This sub-TLV specifies the number of times to retry sending an optional Inform message if an acknowledgement is not received.

Type	Length	Value
38.5	2	number of retries

15.2.7.6 SNMPv3 Notification Receiver Filtering Parameters

This sub-TLV specifies the ASN.1 formatted Object Identifier of the snmpTrapOID value that identifies the notifications to be sent to the notification receiver. SNMP v3 allows the specification of which Trap OIDs are to be sent to a trap receiver. This object specifies the OID of the root of a trap filter sub-tree. All Traps with a Trap OID contained in this trap filter sub-tree SHALL be sent by the OCTCD to the trap receiver. This object starts with the ASN.1 Universal type 6 (Object Identifier) byte, then the ASN.1 length field, then the ASN.1 encoded object identifier components.

Type	Length	Value
38.6	N	filter OID

15.2.7.7 SNMPv3 Notification Receiver Security Name

This sub-TLV specifies the V3 Security Name to use when sending a V3 Notification. This sub-TLV is only used if Trap Type is set to 4 or 5. This name must be a name specified in a config file TLV Type 34 as part of the Diffie-Hellman (DH) Kickstart procedure. The notifications will be sent using the Authentication and Privacy Keys calculated by the modem during the DH Kickstart procedure.

This sub-TLV is not required for Trap Type = 1, 2, or 3 above. If it is not supplied for a Trap type of 4 or 5, then the V3 Notification will be sent in the noAuthNoPriv security level using the security name "@config".

Type	Length	Value
38.7	N	security name

15.2.7.8 SNMPv3 Notification Receiver IPv6 Address

This sub-TLV specifies the IPv6 address of the notification receiver.

Type	Length	Value
38.8	16	IPv6 Address

15.2.8 SEB Server Enable TLS Cipher Suites

TLV-40 enumerates the Cipher Suites [RFC 5246] that will be used to establish the SEB Tunnel in devices implementing SEB Server functionality. Each bit enables or disables the specified Cipher Suite. When a bit is set to "1", the SEBS-capable OCTCD allows the TLS encryption using the specified protocol. When a bit is set to "0", the SEBS-capable OCTCD does not perform TLS encryption using the specified protocol.

The OCTCD MAY support the TLS Cipher Suite assignment with TLV-40.

The OCTCD SHALL NOT support multiple instances of TLV-40.

If TLV-40 is not present in the configuration file, the OCTCD SHALL use a default value of 0xE0.

The OCTCD SHALL reject all instances of TLV-40 when multiple instances are received. This creates a condition requiring the default TLV-40 value be used.

The OCTCD SHALL create a log entry with an error code I440.1 when it receives multiple instances of TLV-40.

Type	Length	Value
40	1	0 - 255

The bits are defined as follows:

0x80: TLS_RSA_WITH_3DES_EDE_CBC_SHA
 0x40: TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_128_CBC_SHA

0x20: TLS_RSA_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA
 0x10: TLS_RSA_WITH_NULL_SHA
 0x08 through 0x01: Reserved

15.2.9 Home Network Prefix Validation

This TLV specifies valid or invalid network IDs used in the Home Network. Multiple elements of this type may be included in the configuration file. The Host creates an ordered list of configured prefixes then parses searching for matches with the Subnet Prefix (Subnet Address AND Subnet Mask Length) and LAN network prefix.

The OCHD2.1 SHALL create an entry with an error code of I456.1 when a TLV39 is partially formed (i.e., cannot be used to create a complete row in the network prefix list).

The OCHD2.1 SHALL create an entry with an error code of I456.2 when a single TLV39 contains IPv4 and IPv6 specific content. A single TLV39 defines either an IPv4 or IPv6 prefix.

The OCHD2.1 SHALL discard an incomplete TLV39.

The OCHD2.1 SHALL discard a TLV39 that contains IPv4 and IPv6 specific content.

Type	Length	Value
39	N	composite

15.2.9.1 Instance Number

This sub-TLV specifies an integer to be used in the ordering of rows. The row ordering and hence, the search order, is incrementing numerical order. The search begins with the lowest Instance Number and ends with the first match or at the end of the list if no match is found.

Type	Length	Value
39.1	1	1-255: Instance Number

15.2.9.2 Prefix Usage

This sub-TLV specifies the action to be taken with the following subnet and mask.

Type	Length	Value
39.2	1	1: Accept 2: Discard

15.2.9.3 IP Address Version

This sub-TLV specifies IP version of the network address.

Type	Length	Value
39.3	1	1: IPv4 2: IPv6

15.2.9.4 IPv4 Prefix Length

This sub-TLV specifies the subnet mask length in CIDR notation.

Type	Length	Value
39.4	1	1-32: Number of bits in subnet mask.

15.2.9.5 IPv4 Subnet Address

This sub-TLV specifies the subnet address to be matched against the LAN network prefix.

Type	Length	Value
39.5	4	IPv4 Subnet Address

15.2.9.6 IPv6 Prefix Length

This sub-TLV specifies the subnet mask length in CIDR notation.

Type	Length	Value
39.6	1	1-128: Number of bits in subnet mask

15.2.9.7 IPv6 Network Address

This sub-TLV specifies the subnet address to be matched against the LAN network prefix.

Type	Length	Value
39.7	16	IPv6 Network Address

16 HDMI-CEC SUPPORT

The OpenCable Thin Chassis Device is required to support the HDMI digital interface. This section defines support for the HDMI-CEC protocol.

The OCTCD SHALL support all mandatory CEC functionality defined in the HDMI specification, [HDMI].

Required support for optional CEC functionality is defined in the following sections.

16.1 Overview of Application Features

The following four features describe the application functions to be supported by the OCTCD implementing CEC over HDMI.

- One Touch Play - When a user turns on the OCTCD, a connected TV also wakes up automatically, selects the OCTCD as its input, and shows its contents on its screen.
- System Standby - When a user turns off the TV, OCTCD also turns off automatically.
- Remote OCTCD Control - While a TV screen shows content from OCTCD, a user can operate the OCTCD using a TV remote instead of an OCTCD remote. The TV remote works in the same manner as the OCTCD remote, e.g., selecting a channel, navigating the guide.
- Device Select - When a user selects the OCTCD on the TV's GUI (e.g., from a list of connected devices), the OCTCD wakes up automatically, and the TV selects the OCTCD as its input and shows its contents on its screen.

16.2 Requirements for Application Features

This section specifies detailed requirements of each required application feature.

16.2.1 One Touch Play

When a user turns on the OCTCD, it SHALL send a <Text View On> message to the TV and broadcast an <Active Source> message with its physical address, followed by a <Menu Status>["Activated"] message.

When the OCTCD receives a <Request Active Source> message while it is a current active source, it SHALL broadcast an <Active Source> message with its physical address and then send a <Menu Status>["Activated"] message.

16.2.2 System Standby

When the OCTCD receives a <Standby> message, it SHALL go into standby unless it is in a state that prevents this operation.

16.2.3 Remote OCTCD Control

When the OCTCD receives a <User Control Pressed> message with a user control code as specified in Table 16.2-1, it SHALL act in a manner identical to a user pressing the corresponding key on the OCTCD's own remote control.

Note: When a user performs an operation of "Volume Up", "Volume Down" or "Mute Volume" via a controller that has audio output functionality, the controller may consume the input event itself or may pass it through to another

device, such as an AV amplifier. In this case, the controller does not have to send a <User Control Pressed> message with the corresponding user control code to OCTCD.

A controller does not have to send a <User Control Pressed> ["Power Toggle Function"] message to the OCTCD. In order to request the OCTCD to turn on or off, the controller may use System Standby feature and Device Select feature.

When the OCTCD becomes the active source (e.g., OCTCD broadcasts an <Active Source> message with its physical address), it SHALL send a <Menu Status>["Activated"] message to the TV after it broadcasts the <Active Source> message.

When the OCTCD receives a <Menu Request> message with any valid parameter while it is the current active source, it SHALL send a <Menu Status>["Activated"] message to the initiator of the <Menu Request> message.

Table 16.2-1 - Keys to be Passed Through

Key for OCTCD	User Control Code (CEC)	
	Operation id	User Operation
VK_UP	0x01	Up
VK_DOWN	0x02	Down
VK_LEFT	0x03	Left
VK_RIGHT	0x04	Right
VK_SELECT	0x00	Select
VK_LAST	0x32	Previous Channel
VK_COLORED_KEY_0	0x72	F2 (Red)
VK_COLORED_KEY_1	0x73	F3 (Green)
VK_COLORED_KEY_2	0x71	F1 (Blue)
VK_COLORED_KEY_3	0x74	F4 (Yellow)
VK_0	0x20	Number 0
VK_1	0x21	Number 1
VK_2	0x22	Number 2
VK_3	0x23	Number 3
VK_4	0x24	Number 4
VK_5	0x25	Number 5
VK_6	0x26	Number 6
VK_7	0x27	Number 7
VK_8	0x28	Number 8
VK_9	0x29	Number 9
VK_EXIT	0x2C	Clear
VK_ENTER	0x2B	Enter
VK_PLAY	0x44	Play
VK_STOP	0x45	Stop
VK_RECORD	0x47	Record
VK_FAST_FWD	0x49	Fast Forward

Key for OCTCD	User Control Code (CEC)	
	Operation id	User Operation
VK_REWIND	0x48	Rewind
VK_PAUSE	0x46	Pause
VK_PAGE_UP	0x37	Page Up
VK_PAGE_DOWN	0x38	Page Down
VK_MENU	0x09	Root Menu
VK_ON_DEMAND	0x52	Video on Demand
VK_GUIDE	0x53	Electronic Program Guide
VK_NEXT_FAVORITE_CHANNEL	0x2F	Next Favorite
VK_INFO	0x35	Display Information
VK_CHANNEL_UP	0x30	Channel Up
VK_CHANNEL_DOWN	0x31	Channel Down
VK_VOLUME_UP	0x41	Volume Up
VK_VOLUME_DOWN	0x42	Volume Down
VK_MUTE	0x43	Mute
VK_POWER	0x6B	Power Toggle Function

When the OCTCD receives a <User Control Pressed>["Power Off Function"] message while in power on state, it SHALL transition to a standby state.

When the OCTCD receives a <User Control Pressed>["Mute Function"] message while in an un-muted state, it SHALL mute audio.

When the OCTCD receives a <User Control Pressed>["Restore Volume Function"] message while in a muted state, it SHALL un-mute audio.

16.2.4 Device Select

When the OCTCD receives a <Give Device Power Status> message, it SHALL send a <Report Power Status> message with its current power status to the initiator of the <Give Device Power Status> message.

When the OCTCD receives a <User Control Pressed> ["Power "] message while in standby state, it SHALL turn on.

When OCTCD receives a <User Control Pressed> ["Power On Function"] message while in standby state, it SHALL turn on.

When the OCTCD receives a <Set Stream Path> message with its own physical address while in power on state, it SHALL broadcast an <Active Source> message with its physical address and then send a <Menu Status> ["Activated"] message to the TV. **Note:** It is allowed that the OCTCD send a <Text View On> message to the TV before it broadcasts the <Active Source> message.

16.3 Addressing Rules

This section specifies requirements for addressing rules in order that each application feature can function properly.

When the Hot Plug Detect signal (HPD) provided from the connected HDMI sink (e.g., a TV) is asserted (HPD has changed from Low to High), the OCTCD SHALL attempt to obtain a physical address from the connected HDMI sink.

The OCTCD SHALL retain the obtained physical address when the HPD from the connected HDMI sink is de-asserted (HPD has changed from High to Low), when the HDMI sink device is disconnected and when OCTCD goes into standby. **Note:** It is allowed that the OCTCD lose its physical address when the AC power of the OCTCD is off or when the HDMI functionality of the OCTCD is disabled.

16.4 Device Recognition

This section specifies requirements that the OCTCD shall support in order that a controller can recognize that the target is an OCTCD device.

After the OCTCD completes a successful initialization and address allocation, then it SHALL broadcast a <Device Vendor ID> message containing the vendor ID assigned to the manufacturer of the OCTCD device. When the OCTCD receives a <Give Device Vendor ID> message, it SHALL broadcast a <Device Vendor ID> message containing the vendor ID assigned to the manufacturer of the OCTCD device.

When the OCTCD receives a <Give OCHD Information> message, it SHALL respond with a <Report OCHD Information> message. <Give OCHD Information> and <Report OCHD Information> are vendor-specific commands defined in Table 16.4-1.

Table 16.4-1 - Definition of <Give OCHD Information> and <Report OCHD Information>

<Give OCHD Information>		<Report OCHD Information>	
Opcode	<Vendor Command with ID>	Opcode	<Vendor Command with ID>
Value	0xA0	Value	0xA0
Description	Requests device information. (Controller(ex.TV) → OCTCD)	Description	Reports device information. (OCTCD → Controller(ex.TV))
Parameters	VendorID (0x001000) Virtual opcode (0x01)	Parameters	VendorID (0x001000) Virtual opcode (0x02) Reserved (0x00)
Parameter Description	CableLabs Vendor Id must be used when sending <Give OCHD Information> Virtual opcode defined as <Give OCHD Information>	Parameter Description	CableLabs Vendor Id must be used when sending <Report OCHD Information> Virtual opcode defined as <Report OCHD Information> Reserved
Response	Respond with <Report OCHD Information>	Response	No response required
Directly Addressed	•	Directly Addressed	•
Broadcast		Broadcast	
Mandatory for Initiator		Mandatory for Initiator	
Mandatory for Follower	OCTCD	Mandatory for Follower	

Annex A Format and Content for OCTCD Events (Normative)

This Annex reuses the event framework used in DOCSIS. In particular, only the Local log requirements for [OSSIV2.0] are required for the OCTCD.

The format of Table A-1 is slightly different from the one in [OSSIV2.0]. A brief summary of the OCTCD elements is below.

- Each row specifies a possible event that the OCTCD logs to the available mechanisms.
- The first column (Process) indicates the stage where the event would happen. The currently defined processes are: 'Prov' Provisioning of the OCTCD, and DHCP renewal of DHCP.
- The second column (SubProcess) indicates a sub-process within the specified Process. For example, for the process 'Prov', the sub-process 'TLV PARSING' and DHCP (initial DHCP provisioning) are defined; the DHCP Process includes the 'Renewal' sub-process.
- The third column (Event Level) indicates the event level of the event (see [OSSIV2.0]). This column value is reported in the MIB object docsDevEvLevel of the docsDevEventTable.
- The fourth column (Event Message) indicates the event text to record. This column value is reported in the MIB object docsDevEvText of the docsDevEventTable.
- The Fifth column (Message Notes and Details) is a placeholder to indicate special interpretation of parameters or indications for the Event Message column.
- The sixth column (Error Code Set) correspond to an Encoding model of the events (originally defined in [OSSIV2.0] for DOCSIS 2.0 implementations or [OSSIV3.0] for DOCSIS 3.0 implementations). This Error Code set is in the scope of the OCTCD specification. However, some codes have been reused from DOCSIS for consistency. Because DOCSIS may extend this code set independently of the events defined in the Open Cable specification, corresponding Error Code Set would not be always the same for identical error conditions.
- The seventh column (Event ID) is a numeric representation of the Error Code Set. The mapping of Event ID and Error Code Set is defined in [OSSIV2.0] for DOCSIS 2.0 implementations or [OSSIV3.0] for DOCSIS 3.0 implementations, and this specification follows the same methodology. This column value is reported in the MIB object docsDevEvId of the docsDevEventTable.
- The eighth column (Notification Name) indicates the SNMP notification object type that this event would generate. Currently no notifications are defined. This column is left in the table format for future study.
- Additional formatting indications are described as well in [OSSIV2.0] for DOCSIS 2.0 implementations or [OSSIV3.0] for DOCSIS 3.0 implementations.

Table A-1 - eSTB Event List for the OCTCD

Process	SubProcess	Event Level	Event message	Message Notes And Details	Error Code Set	Event ID
General TLV Errors						
Prov	TLV PARSING	Notice	Unrecognized TLV or sub-TLVs detected <P1>	<P1>; 'TLVnn', where nn is the decimal type	I401.1	73040101
Prov	TLV PARSING	Notice	Invalid TLV Type encoding <P1>	<P1>; 'TLVnn', where nn is the decimal type	I401.2	73040102
Prov	TLV PARSING	Notice	Resource limit reached		I401.3	73040103

Process	SubProcess	Event Level	Event message	Message Notes And Details	Error Code Set	Event ID
TLV-1 Failures						
Prov	TLV-1 PARSING	Notice	TLV-1 - Multiple TLVs not allowed		I401.11	73041111
TLV-11 Failures						
Prov	TLV-11 PARSING	Notice	TLV-11 - unrecognized OID		I411.1	73041101
Prov	TLV-11 PARSING	Warning	TLV-11 - Multiple SET operations of object instance attempted		I411.2	73041102
Prov	TLV-11 PARSING	Warning	TLV-11 - Invalid varbind encoding		I411.3	73041103
TLV 38 Failures						
Prov	TLV-38 PARSING	Warning	TLV38 - Duplicate TLV Received		I438.1	73043801
Prov	TLV-38 PARSING	Critical	TLV38 - No Receiver IP Address received in TLV		I438.2	73043802
Prov	TLV-38 PARSING	Warning	TLV38 - No SNMPv2c Trap specified		I438.3	73043803
Prov	TLV-38 PARSING	Warning	TLV38 - Inconsistent IP address type specified in TLV1		I438.4	73043804
TLV 39 Failures						
Prov	TLV 39 PARSING	Warning	TLV39 - Incomplete TLV		I456.1	73045601
Prov	TLV 39 PARSING	Warning	TLV39 - inconsistent IP version		I456.2	73045602
TLV 40 Failures						
Prov	TLV 40 PARSING	Critical	TLV40- Multiple Instances not allowed.		I440.1	73044001
TLV 43 Failures						
Prov	TLV 43 PARSING	Critical	TLV43 - Invalid Vendor ID encoding		I443.1	73044301
TLV 53 Failures						
Prov	TLV 53 PARSING	Critical	TLV53 - Community Name not present		I453.1	73045301
Prov	TLV 53 PARSING	Critical	TLV53 - Transport address not present		I453.2	73045302
Prov	TLV 53 PARSING	Warning	TLV53 - Multiple sub-TLVs not allowed.		I453.3	73045303
Prov	TLV 53 PARSING	Warning	TLV53 - SNMP syntax conflicts detected		I453.4	73045304

Process	SubProcess	Event Level	Event message	Message Notes And Details	Error Code Set	Event ID
Prov	TLV 53 PARSING	Warning	TLV53 - Insufficient table resources		I453.5	73045305
Prov	TLV 53 PARSING	Warning	TLV53 Attempt to create duplicate entry not allowed		I453.6	73045306
TLV 54 Failures						
Prov	TLV 54 PARSING	Warning	TLV54 - Access View Name not present		I454.1	73045401
Prov	TLV 54 PARSING	Warning	TLV54 - Multiple sub-TLVs not allowed		I454.2	73045402
Prov	TLV 54 PARSING	Warning	TLV54 SNMP syntax conflicts detected		I454.3	73045403
Prov	TLV 54 PARSING	Warning	TLV54 - Insufficient table resources		I454.4	73045404
Prov	TLV 54 PARSING	Warning	TLV54 - Attempt to create duplicate entry not allowed		I454.5	73045405
DHCP IP Acquisition						
Prov	DHCP	Critical	DHCP FAILED - Discover sent, no offer received for <P1>	<P1>: 'eSTB' or 'CC'	D01.0	68000100
Prov	DHCP	Critical	DHCP FAILED - Request sent, No response for <P1>	<P1>: 'eSTB' or 'CC'	D02.0	68000200
Prov	DHCP	Critical	DHCP FAILED - Response doesn't contain ALL the valid fields for <P1>	<P1>: 'eSTB' or 'CC'	D03.1	68000301
Prov	DHCP	Critical	DHCP failed - RS sent, no RA received	Only applies to eSTB IPv6 addresses	D12.0	68001200
Prov	DHCP	Critical	DHCP Failed - Invalid RA	Only applies to eSTB IPv6 addresses	D12.1	68001201
Prov	DHCP	Critical	DHCP failed - DHCP Solicit sent, No DHCP Advertise received	Only applies to eSTB IPv6 addresses	D12.2	68001202
Prov	DHCP	Critical	DHCP failed - DHCP Request sent, No DHCP REPLY received	Only applies to eSTB IPv6 addresses	D12.3	68001203
Prov	DHCP	Critical	Link-Local address failed DAD	Only applies to eSTB IPv6 addresses	D13.1	68001301

Process	SubProcess	Event Level	Event message	Message Notes And Details	Error Code Set	Event ID
Prov	DHCP	Critical	DHCP lease address failed DAD	Only applies to eSTB IPv6 addresses	D13.2	68001302
DHCP IP Renewal						
DHCP		Error	DHCP RENEW sent - No response for <P1>	<P1>: 'eSTB' or 'CC'	D101.0	68010100
DHCP		Error	DHCP REBIND sent - No response for <P1>	<P1>: 'eSTB' or 'CC'	D102.0	68010200
DHCP		Error	DHCP RENEW sent - Invalid DHCP option for <P1>	<P1>: 'eSTB' or 'CC'	D103.0	68010300
DHCP		Error	DHCP REBIND sent - Invalid DHCP option for <P1>	<P1>: 'eSTB' or 'CC'	D104.0	68010400
OS/HW/Middleware Initialization						
Boot	HW/SW Init	Notice	Hardware and OS UP	Hardware and Operating system initialized per OCAP 20.2.2 - 2	B01.0	66000100
Boot	HW/SW Init	Notice	Execution Engine UP	Execution Engine Initialized per OCAP 20.2.2 - 3	B02.0	66000200
Boot	Card Binding	Notice	Copy Protection Resource opened		B03.0	66000300
Boot	Card Binding	Notice	Host AuthKey sent	Host response to Card Auth Key request	B04.0	66000400
Boot	Card Binding	Critical	Binding Failure: Card reasons		B05.0	66000500
Boot	Card Binding	Critical	Binding Failure: Invalid Host Cert		B06.0	66000600
Boot	Card Binding	Critical	Binding Failure: Invalid Host Signature		B07.0	66000700
Boot	Card Binding	Critical	Binding Failure: Invalid Host AuthKey		B08.0	66000800
Boot	Card Binding	Critical	Binding Failure: Other		B09.0	66000900
Boot	Card Binding	Critical	Card Validation Error: Validation revoked		B10.0	66001000
Boot	Card Binding	Critical	Binding Failure. Incompatible module	Error Code 161-64 issued per Annex B CCIF2	B11.0	66001100

Process	SubProcess	Event Level	Event message	Message Notes And Details	Error Code Set	Event ID
Boot	Card Binding	Notice	Binding Complete: Card/Host Validated		B12.0	66001200
Boot	Copy Protection	Notice	Copy Protection initiated	Card and Host have exchanged CPKey Generation messages	B13.0	66001300
Boot	OOB Support	Notice	FDC acquired	FDC downstream has been successfully acquired	B14.0	66001400
Boot	OOB Support	Notice	Set QPSK mode	Preferred operational mode for the network known to be QPSK	B15.0	66001500
Boot	OOB Support	Notice	Set Adv. DSG mode	Preferred operational mode for the network known to be Advanced DSG mode	B16.0	66001600
Boot	OOB Support	Notice	Set Adv. Dsg 1-way mode	Preferred operational mode for the network known to be Advanced DSG One-way mode.	B17.0	66001700
Boot	OOB Support	Notice	DSG acquired	DSG downstream has been successfully acquired	B18.0	66001800
Boot	OOB Support	Notice	DOCSIS 2-way established	DOCSIS upstream acquired	B19.0	66001900
Boot	OOB Support	Notice	VCT acquired	A complete VCT with the correct vct_id has been loaded	B20.0	66002000
Boot	OCAP Support	Notice	OCAP launched	An OCAP JVM has been started	B21.0	66002100
Boot	OCAP Support	Error	OCAP Startup Error	An Error has occurred during OCAP startup	B22.0	66002200
Boot	OCAP Support	Notice	XAIT received		B23.0	66002300

Process	SubProcess	Event Level	Event message	Message Notes And Details	Error Code Set	Event ID
Boot	OCAP Support	Error	Error reading XAIT		B24.0	66002400
Boot	OCAP Support	Notice	Initial Monitor App launched		B25.0	66002500
Boot	OCAP Support	Notice	Initial Monitor App Startup Error		B26.0	66002600
Boot	OCAP Support	Notice	Proprietary Condition Met	An implementation-specific condition required to start OCAP has been met (Note 1)	B27.xx	660027xx
SW D/L	Common Download	Notice	Host Image Download Complete		B28.0	66002800
SW D/L	Common Download	Error	Common Download CVT Error		B29.0	66002900
SW D/L	Common Download	Error	Host Image Download Error, <P1>	<P1>: Common Download Error code as defined in the OC Host spec table 11.1-1.	B30.0	66003000
SW D/L	Card Firmware Upgrade	Notice	Card Image Download Complete		B31.0	66003100
SEB Operation						
SEB	Init	Notice	Link-Local address <P1> acquired for <P2>	<P1>:IP address	P1.1	80000101
SEB	Init	Notice	SEBC Initialization start		P1.2	80000102
SEB	Init	Notice	SEBC Initialization complete		P1.3	80000103
SEB	Init	Notice	SEBS Initialization start		P1.4	80000104
SEB	Init	Notice	SEBS Initialization complete		P1.5	80000105
SEB	Init	Warning	Unable to initialize SEB for unknown reason		P1.6	80000106
SEB	Init	Warning	Unable to initialize server - insufficient CPE count		P1.7	80000107
SEB	Init	Warning	Unable to initialize server - NACO = 0		P1.8	80000108
SEB	Init	Warning	Unable to initialize server - ifAdminStatus is down		P1.9	80000109

Process	SubProcess	Event Level	Event message	Message Notes And Details	Error Code Set	Event ID
SEB	Init	Warning	Unable to initialize server - MIB Control Object is false		P1.10	8000110
SEB	SEBS	Notice	SEB Server <P1> advertising FOM = <P2>	<P2>: UPnP friendly name <P2>: calculated FOM	P11.1	80001101
SEB	SEBS	Warning	SEBS Terminating - DSG two way lost		P11.2	80001102
SEB	SEBS	Warning	SEBS Terminating - SEB control object set to FALSE		P11.3	80001103
SEB	SEBS	Warning	SEBS Terminating - eCM exited 2-way communications		P11.4	80001104
SEB	SEBS	Warning	Tunnel request from <P1> rejected. Unable to authenticate device.	<P1>: SEBC friendly name <P2>: SEBC MAC	P11.5	80001105
SEB	SEBS	Warning	Tunnel request from <P1> rejected. SEBS at max CPE.	<P1>: SEBC friendly name <P2> SEBC MAC	P11.6	80001106
SEB	SEBS	Warning	SEBS rejected UPnP Action - unauthenticated source <P1>	<P1>: SEBC friendly name <P2>: SEBC MAC	P11.7	80001107
SEB	SEBS	Warning	SEBS rejected UPnP Query - unauthenticated source <P1>	<P1>: SEBC friendly name <P2>: SEBC MAC	P11.8	80001108
SEB	SEBS	Notice	Tunnel initialized for <P1>	<P1>: SEBC friendly name <P2>: SEBC MAC	P11.9	80001109
SEB	SEBS	Notice	Tunnel closed for <P1> Requested by SEBC.	<P1>: SEBC friendly name <P2>: SEBC MAC	P11.10	80001110
SEB	SEBC	Notice	SEBC discovered SEBS <P1>	<P1>: SEB Server MAC	P21.1	80002101
SEB	SEBC	Notice	Tunnel established with <p1>	<P1>: SEB Server MAC	P21.2	80002102

Process	SubProcess	Event Level	Event message	Message Notes And Details	Error Code Set	Event ID
SEB	SEBC	Notice	ClientConnect successful using Port <P1> with <P2>	<P1>: TCP Tunnel Port <P2>: SEB Server MAC	P21.3	80002103
SEB	SEBC	Warning	ClientConnect failed UPnP error 402 (Invalid Args) for <p1>	<P1>: SEB Server MAC	P21.4	80002104
SEB	SEBC	Warning	ClientConnect failed UPnP error 501 (Action Failed) for <p1>	<P1>: SEB Server MAC	P21.5	80002105
SEB	SEBC	Warning	ClientConnect failed UPnP error 606 (Action Not Authorized) by <p1>	<P1>: SEB Server MAC	P21.6	80002106
SEB	SEBC	Warning	ClientConnect failed Error 801 - SEBS <P1> at Max Number of Devices	<P1>: SEB Server MAC	P21.7	80002107
SEB	SEBC	Notice	ClientJoin successful <p1>	<P1>: Multicast address	P21.8	80002108
SEB	SEBC	Warning	ClientJoin failed for <p1> : 402 Invalid Arguments	<p1>: Multicast Address	P21.9	80002109
SEB	SEBC	Warning	ClientJoin failed for <P1> : 501 current state of service prevents invoking that action.	<P1>: Multicast Address	P21.10	80002110
SEB	SEBC	Warning	ClientJoin failed for <p1> 606 Action not authorized	<P1>: Multicast Address	P21.11	80002111
okSEB	SEBC	Notice	ClientAddDevice successful <p1> <p2>	<P1> device type <P2> Device MAC	P21.12	80002112
SEB	SEBC	Warning	ClientAddDevice failed 402 Invalid Args <P1> <P2>	<P1> device type <P2> Device MAC	P21.13	80002113
SEB	SEBC	Warning	ClientAddDevice for <P1> to SEBS <P1> failed 501 current state of service prevents invoking that action.	<P1> SEB client MAC <P2> SEB Server MAC	P21.14	80002114
SEB	SEBC	Warning	ClientAddDevice to SEBS <P1> failed Error 606 Action not authorized	<P1> SEB Server MAC	P21.15	80002115

Process	SubProcess	Event Level	Event message	Message Notes And Details	Error Code Set	Event ID
SEB	SEBC	Warning	ClientAddDevice failed Error 801 - SEBS <P1> at Max Number of Devices	<P1> SEB Server MAC	P21.16	80002116
SEB	SEBC	Warning	ClientAddDevice failed Error 802 - SEBS <P1> has terminated SEBS services	<P1> SEB Server MAC	P21.17	80002117
SEB	SEBC	Notice	ClientRemoveDevice successful <p1> <p2>	<P1> device type <P2> Device MAC	P21.18	80002118
SEB	SEBC	Warning	ClientRemoveDevice failed 402 Invalid Args <P1> <P2>	<P1> device type <P2> Device MAC	P21.19	80002119
SEB	SEBC	Warning	ClientRemoveDevice failed 501 current state of service prevents invoking that action. <P1> <P2>	<P1> device type <P2> Device MAC	P21.20	80002120
SEB	SEBC	Warning	ClientRemoveDevice failed Error 606 Action not authorized <P1> <P2>	<P1> device type <P2> Device MAC	P21.21	80002121
SEB	SEBC	Warning	ClientRemoveDevice failed Error 802 - SEBS has terminated services <P1> <P2>	<P1> device type <P2> Device MAC	P21.22	80002122
SEB	SEBC	Warning	ClientRemoveDevice failed Error 803 - unrecognized device <P1> <P2>	<P1> device type <P2> Device MAC	P21.23	80002123
SEB	SEBC	Warning	SEBC unable to detect SEBS		P21.24	80002124

Note 1: One or more B27.xx event codes may be posted, with each value of 'xx' representing a vendor-defined internal condition or conditions. However, all proprietary events required to permit the launch and operation of the OCAP stack must be reported in some B27.xx event code.

Appendix I Revision History

The following ECNs were incorporated into OC-SP-HOSTTC-CFR-I02-100507:

ECN	Description	Date
HOSTTC-CFR-N-10.1535-1	CEC Requirement Corrections and Clarifications	4/16/10
HOSTTC-CFR-N-10.1536-1	Sync TC OSD, Event codes, and DOCSIS support with Host2.1 CFR	4/16/10

The following ECNs were incorporated into OC-SP-HOSTTC-CFR-I03-100910:

ECN	Description	Date
HOSTTC-CFR-N-10.1559-1	Modify Thin Chassis OSD HDMI MIB Value Reporting	8/13/10
HOSTTC-CFR-N-10.1560-2	Minor Adjustments to Thin Chassis Diagnostic OSD	8/13/10
HOSTTC-CFR-N-10.1565-1	Human-readable GPS Time	8/13/10
HOSTTC-CFR-N-10.1566-1	Improved Memory Page Template layout	8/13/10
HOSTTC-CFR-N-10.1568-1	OSD General Interpretation Improvements	8/13/10

The following ECNs were incorporated into OC-SP-HOSTTC-CFR-I04-110204:

ECN	Description	Date
HOSTTC-CFR-N-10.1582-1	Configured Community Names for Loopback	11/5/10
HOSTTC-CFR-N-10.1590-1	Improved OCAP APPS Template Layout	11/19/10
HOSTTC-CFR-N-10.1592-1	Remove Pause in Boot Process	11/5/10
HOSTTC-CFR-N-10.1622-1	Correct TC SCTE128 References	1/14/11
HOSTTC-CFR-N-10.1623-2	3D Host TC Requirements	1/14/11
HOSTTC-CFR-N-10.1624-1	send_DCD_info() APDU DCC Operation Clarification	12/10/10

The following ECN was incorporated into OC-SP-HOSTTC-CFR-I05-110502:

ECN	Description	Date
HOSTTC-CFR-N-11.1662-3	Host TC: Reference edits for OpenCable bundle inclusions	5/9/11

The following ECNs were incorporated into OC-SP-HOSTTC-CFR-I06-120112:

ECN	Description	Date
HOSTTC-CFR-N-11.1680-1	HN Network Prefix TLV 39 (Thin Chassis)	8/12/11
HOSTTC-CFR-N-11.1682-1	Add ipAddressTable to Host Thin Chassis	8/26/11
HOSTTC-CFR-N-11.1686-1	Host Thin Chassis Changes for Set-top Extender Bridge	8/12/11
HOSTTC-CFR-N-11.1695-1	Correct message length field for dump file format	10/7/11
HOSTTC-CFR-N-11.1712-1	Thin Chassis SEB Client Provisioning	11/4/11
HOSTTC-CFR-N-11.1730-1	BootUpPowerMode for TC	12/16/11
HOSTTC-CFR-N-11.1735-2	Deprecate ADSG IP_U flow support	12/16/11
HOSTTC-CFR-N-11.1741-1	Host Thin Chassis IPv4/v6 dual stack requirement	1/6/12

The following ECNs were incorporated into OC-SP-HOSTTC-CFR-I07-120531:

ECN	Description	Date
HOSTTC-CFR-N-11.1744-2	Overview of IP Address Acquisition Including Failure Cases	2/24/12
HOSTTC-CFR-N-12.1767-1	Remove CableCard ipNetToPhysicalTable references	4/6/12
HOSTTC-CFR-N-12.1772-1	Remove race condition for set-top IP mode when TLV217.1 is absent	4/6/12

The following ECNs were incorporated into OC-SP-HOSTTC-CFR-I08-130418:

ECN	Author	Date	Description
HOSTTC-CFR-N-13.1832-1	Burroughs	3/22/13	DOCSIS 3.0 eCM 1x1 Mode
HOSTTC-CFR-N-13.1833-1	Barringer	4/5/13	send_DCD_info fix to account for Downstream Frequency Override